

# FORD **MONDEO** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2012

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3536en 04/2012 20120207134432

# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	7

## At a Glance

At a Glance.....	11
------------------	----

## Child Safety

Child Seats.....	22
Booster Seats.....	23
Child Seat Positioning.....	24
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	27
Child Safety Locks.....	28

## Occupant protection

Principle of Operation.....	30
Fastening the seat belts.....	32
Seat belt height adjustment.....	32
Seat belt reminder.....	33
Using seat belts during pregnancy.....	33
Disabling the passenger airbag.....	33

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	35
Programming the remote control.....	35
Changing the remote control battery.....	35

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	38
Global Opening and Closing.....	40
Keyless Entry.....	41

## Engine immobiliser

Principle of Operation.....	45
Coded keys.....	45
Arming the engine immobiliser.....	45

Disarming the engine immobiliser.....	45
---------------------------------------	----

## Alarm

Principle of Operation.....	46
Arming the alarm.....	48
Disarming the alarm.....	48

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	49
Audio Control.....	49

## Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers.....	51
Autowipers.....	51
Windscreen Washers.....	52
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	52
Headlamp Washers.....	52
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	52
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	53

## Lighting

Lighting Control.....	55
Daytime Running Lamps.....	56
Autolamps.....	56
Automatic Main Beam Control.....	56
Front Fog Lamps.....	57
Rear Fog Lamps.....	58
Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With: Adaptive Front Lighting/Xenon Headlamps.....	58
Headlamp Levelling.....	58
Adaptive Headlamps.....	59
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	60
Direction Indicators.....	61
Interior Lamps.....	61
Removing a Headlamp.....	63
Changing a Bulb.....	64
Bulb Specification Chart.....	70

# Table of Contents

---

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	72
Exterior Mirrors.....	74
Electric exterior mirrors.....	74
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	75
Blind Spot Monitor.....	76

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	79
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	81
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	83

## Information Displays

General Information.....	85
Trip Computer.....	94
Personalised Settings.....	96
Information Messages.....	98

## Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	108
Air Vents.....	108
Manual Climate Control.....	109
Automatic Climate Control.....	111
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	113
Auxiliary Heater.....	114
Electric sunroof.....	118

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	121
Manual Seats.....	121
Power Seats.....	122
Head Restraints.....	124
Rear Seats.....	124
Heated Seats.....	125
Ventilated Seats.....	126

## Convenience features

Sun Shades.....	127
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	127

Clock.....	127
Cigar Lighter.....	127
Ashtray.....	128
Auxiliary Power Points.....	128
Cup Holders.....	129
Glove Box.....	129
Storage compartments.....	129
Map Pockets.....	130
Memory Function.....	130
Glasses Holder.....	131
CD changer.....	131
Auxiliary Input Socket.....	131
USB Port.....	131
Floor Mats.....	132

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	133
Ignition Switch.....	133
Keyless Starting.....	133
Steering Wheel Lock.....	135
Starting a Petrol Engine.....	136
Starting a Petrol Engine - E85.....	137
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	137
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	138
Switching Off the Engine.....	138
Engine Block Heater.....	138

## Start-Stop

Principle of Operation.....	140
Using start-stop.....	140

## Eco Mode

Principle of Operation.....	142
Using Eco mode.....	142

## Fuel and Refuelling

Safety Precautions.....	143
Fuel Quality - Petrol.....	143

# Table of Contents

---

Fuel Quality - E85.....	143	<b>Cruise Control</b>	
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	143	Principle of Operation.....	165
Catalytic Converter.....	144	Using Cruise Control.....	165
Fuel filler flap.....	144	<b>Adaptive cruise control (ACC)</b>	
Refuelling.....	146	Principle of Operation.....	167
Refuelling - E85.....	146	Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	168
Fuel Consumption.....	146	Forward alert function.....	172
Technical Specifications.....	146	<b>Speed Limiter</b>	
<b>Transmission</b>		Principle of Operation.....	173
Manual Transmission.....	151	Using the speed limiter.....	173
Automatic Transmission.....	151	<b>Driver Alert</b>	
<b>Brakes</b>		Principle of Operation.....	175
Principle of Operation.....	154	Using driver alert.....	175
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	154	<b>Lane Departure Warning</b>	
Parking Brake.....	154	Principle of Operation.....	177
<b>Stability Control</b>		Using lane departure warning.....	177
Principle of Operation.....	155	<b>Load Carrying</b>	
Using Stability Control.....	155	General Information.....	179
<b>Hill Start Assist</b>		Luggage Anchor Points.....	179
Principle of Operation.....	156	Sliding Loadspace Floor.....	180
Using hill start assist.....	156	Rear Under Floor Storage.....	182
<b>Active suspension</b>		Luggage Covers.....	182
Principle of Operation.....	159	Cargo Nets.....	183
Using active suspension.....	159	Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	184
<b>Parking Aids</b>		Dog Guard.....	184
Principle of Operation.....	160	Load Retaining Fixtures.....	186
Parking Aid.....	160	<b>Towing</b>	
<b>Rear view camera</b>		Towing a Trailer.....	188
Principle of Operation.....	162	Tow Ball.....	188
Rear View Camera.....	162	<b>Driving Hints</b>	
		Running-In.....	192

# Table of Contents

---

General Driving Points - Vehicles With: Sports Suspension.....	192	Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4)/2.3L Duratec-HE (MI4).....	219
Cold Weather Precautions.....	192	Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4).....	219
Driving Through Water.....	192	Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel/2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel/2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	220
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>		Engine Oil Check.....	220
First Aid Kit.....	193	Engine Coolant Check.....	220
Warning Triangle.....	193	Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	221
<b>Fuses</b>		Power Steering Fluid Check.....	221
Fuse Box Locations.....	194	Washer Fluid Check.....	222
Changing a Fuse.....	195	Technical Specifications.....	222
Fuse Specification Chart.....	196		
<b>Vehicle recovery</b>		<b>Vehicle Care</b>	
Towing Points.....	206	Cleaning the Exterior.....	225
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	206	Cleaning the Interior.....	226
		Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	226
<b>Maintenance</b>		<b>Vehicle battery</b>	
General Information.....	208	Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	227
Opening and Closing the Bonnet.....	208	Changing the Vehicle Battery.....	228
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	210	Battery connection points.....	228
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma).....	211		
Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4).....	212	<b>Wheels and Tyres</b>	
Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4).....	213	General Information.....	229
Under Bonnet Overview - 2.3L Duratec-HE (MI4).....	214	Changing a Road Wheel.....	229
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....	215	Temporary Mobility Kit.....	234
Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	216	Tyre Care.....	238
Under Bonnet Overview - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	218	Using Winter Tyres.....	238
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	219	Using Snow Chains.....	239
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma).....	219	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....	239
		Technical Specifications.....	240
		<b>Vehicle identification</b>	
		Vehicle Identification Plate.....	244
		Vehicle Identification Number.....	245

# Table of Contents

---

## Capacities and Specifications

Technical Specifications.....246

## Audio introduction

Important audio information.....250

## Audio unit overview

Audio unit overview.....251

## Audio System Security

Security code.....254

Lost security code.....254

Entering a security code.....254

Incorrect security code.....254

## Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays

Setting the clock and date on the audio unit.....255

## Audio unit operation

On/off control.....256

Bass/treble control.....256

Balance/fade control.....256

Audio menu control.....256

Station preset buttons.....258

Waveband button.....258

Autostore control.....258

Traffic information control.....259

Station tuning control.....260

## Audio unit menus

Automatic volume control.....262

Digital signal processing (DSP).....262

Audio distortion reduction (CLIP).....262

Alternative frequencies.....263

Regional mode (REG).....263

News broadcasts.....264

## Compact Disc Player

Loading compact discs.....265

Track selection.....265

Loading the compact disc changer.....265

Unloading the compact disc changer.....266

Compact disc playback.....266

Fast forward/reverse.....266

Shuffle/random.....266

Compact disc track compression.....267

Compact disc track scanning.....267

Ejecting compact discs.....267

Repeat compact disc tracks.....268

MP3 file playback.....268

MP3 display options.....269

Ending compact disc playback.....269

## Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket

Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket.....270

## Audio Troubleshooting

Audio troubleshooting.....271

## Telephone

General Information.....272

Telephone setup.....272

Bluetooth setup.....273

Telephone controls.....273

Using the telephone - Vehicles Without:  
Navigation System.....274

Using the telephone - Vehicles With:  
Navigation System.....276

## Voice control

Principle of Operation.....279

Using voice control.....279

Audio unit commands.....280

Telephone commands.....289

Navigation system commands.....294

# Table of Contents

---

Climate control commands.....294

## **Connectivity**

General Information.....297

Connecting an external device.....298

Connecting an external device - Vehicles  
With: Bluetooth.....298

Using a USB device.....299

Using an iPod.....301

## **Appendices**

Type approvals.....305

Type approvals.....305

Type approvals.....305

Type approvals.....306

Electromagnetic compatibility.....307

# Introduction

---

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

**Note:** *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.*

**Note:** *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

**Note:** *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.*

This vehicle has received the endorsement of TÜV, the accredited international testing organisation, for its allergy-friendly properties.

All materials used in the manufacture of the interior of this vehicle meet strict requirements of the TÜV TOXPROOF Criteria Catalogue for Vehicle Interiors by TÜV Produkt and Umwelt GmbH and are designed to minimize the risk of allergic reactions.

Additionally an efficient pollen filter protects the passengers against allergen particles in the outdoor air.

For more information, contact TÜV at [www.tuv.com](http://www.tuv.com).

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

### Symbols in this handbook

#### WARNING



You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

#### CAUTION



You risk damaging your vehicle if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the caution symbol.

### Symbols on your vehicle



When you see these symbols, read and follow the relevant instructions in this handbook before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

### Now you can be sure that your Ford parts are Ford parts

Your Ford has been built to the highest standards using high quality Ford Original Parts. As a result, you can enjoy driving it for many years.

# Introduction

---

Should the unexpected occur and a major part needs replacing, we recommend that you accept nothing less than Ford Original Parts.

The use of Ford Original Parts ensures that your vehicle is repaired to its pre-accident condition and maintains its maximum residual value.

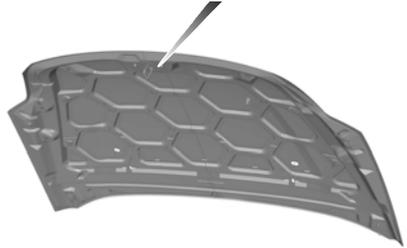
Ford Original Parts match Ford's stringent safety requirements and high standards of fit, finish and reliability. Quite simply, they represent the best overall repair value, including parts and labour costs.

Now it is easier to tell if you have really been given Ford Original Parts. The Ford logo is clearly visible on the following parts if they are Ford Original Parts. If your vehicle has to be repaired, look for the clearly visible Ford branding and make sure that only Ford Original Parts have been used.

## **Look for the Ford logo on the following parts**

### **Sheet metal**

- Bonnet
- Doors
- Luggage compartment lid or tailgate
- Wing



E131722

### **Bumper and radiator grille**

- Radiator grille
- Front and rear bumper

# Introduction

---



E131723

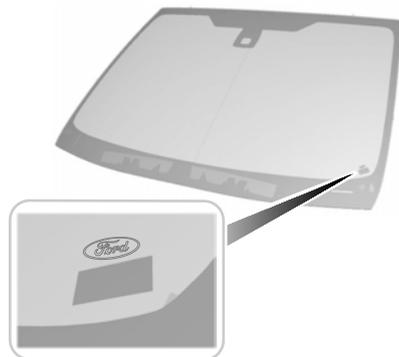
## Exterior mirror



E131724

## Glass

- Rear window
- Side glass
- Windscreen



E88507

# Introduction

---

## Lighting

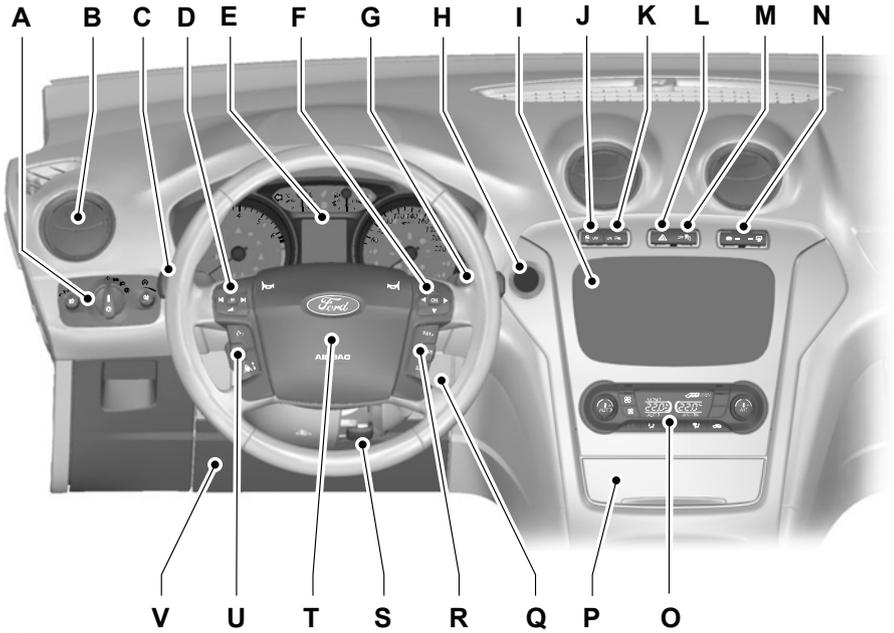
- Rear lamps
- Headlamp



E131725

# At a Glance

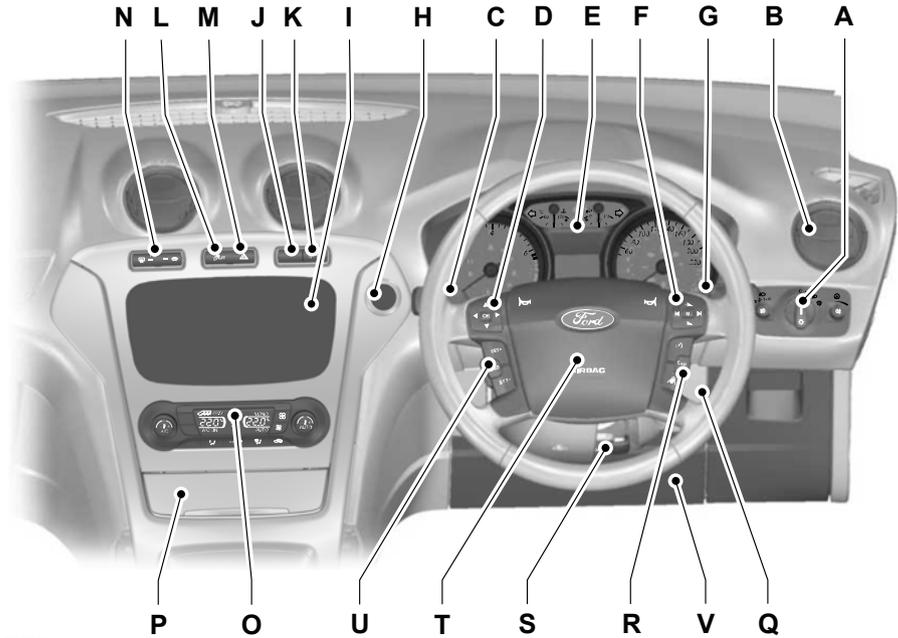
## Instrument panel overview - left-hand drive



E87719

# At a Glance

## Instrument panel overview - right-hand drive



E87720

- A Lighting controls. See **Lighting Control** (page 55).
- B Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 108).
- C Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 61). Telephone control buttons. See **Telephone controls** (page 273). Voice control buttons. See **Using voice control** (page 279). Lane departure warning control buttons. See **Lane Departure Warning** (page 177).
- D Audio controls. See **Audio Control** (page 49).
- E Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 79).
- F Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 85).
- G Wiper lever. See **Windscreen Wipers** (page 51).
- H Start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 133).
- I Audio unit. See **Audio unit overview** (page 251).
- I Navigation unit. See separate handbook.

## At a Glance

- J Stability control (ESP) switch. See **Using Stability Control** (page 155). Start-stop switch. See **Using start-stop** (page 140).
- K Parking aid switch. See **Parking Aid** (page 160).
- L Hazard warning flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 60).
- M Passenger airbag deactivation warning lamp. See **Disabling the passenger airbag** (page 33).
- N Heated windscreen and heated rear window switches. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 113).
- O Climate controls. See **Manual Climate Control** (page 109). See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 111).
- P Cigar lighter. See **Cigar Lighter** (page 127).
- Q Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 133).
- R Cruise control and speed limiter switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 165). Adaptive cruise control switches. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 168). Speed limiter switches. See **Using the speed limiter** (page 173).
- S Steering wheel adjustment lever. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 49).
- T Horn.
- U Cruise control and speed limiter switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 165). Adaptive cruise control switches. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 168). Speed limiter switches. See **Using the speed limiter** (page 173).
- V Driver knee airbag. See **Principle of Operation** (page 30).

# At a Glance

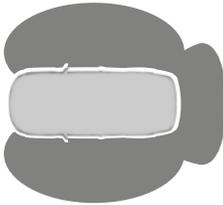
## Electric child safety locks



E124779

See **Child Safety Locks** (page 28).

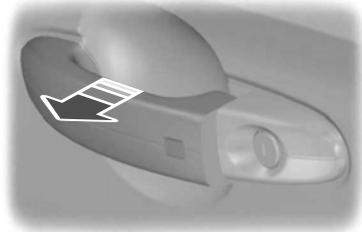
## Keyless entry



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges.

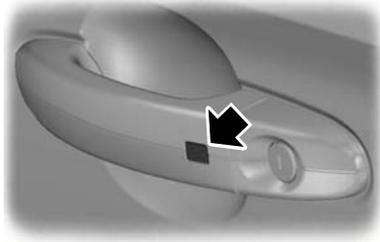
## Unlocking the vehicle



E78278

Pull a door handle to unlock all the doors and the luggage compartment lid and disarm the alarm.

## Locking the vehicle



E87384



E87435

See **Keyless Entry** (page 41).

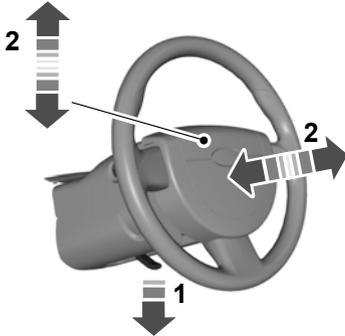
# At a Glance

## Adjusting the steering wheel

### WARNING



Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.



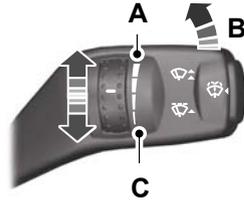
E95178



E95179

See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 49).

## Autowipers



E70315

- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor using the rotary control.

See **Autowipers** (page 51).

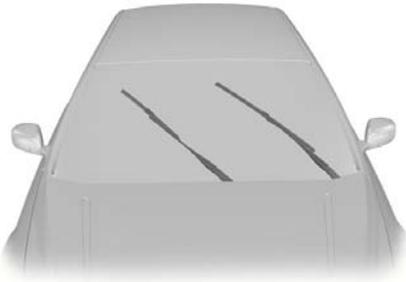
## Changing the wiper blades

### CAUTION



You can use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. The windscreen wipers will return to their normal position as soon as you switch on the ignition so make sure that the outside of the windscreen is free from snow and ice before you switch on the ignition.

# At a Glance



E85833



E75188

Switch off the ignition and move the wiper lever to position **A** within three seconds. Release the lever when the windscreen wipers have moved to the service position.

See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 53).

## Autolamps



E70719

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.

See **Lighting Control** (page 55).

## Automatic main beam control

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the main beam on or off.

The system will automatically switch on main beam if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off main beam before it can distract other road users. Dipped beams will remain on.

See **Automatic Main Beam Control** (page 56).

## Electric windows

**Note:** *To reduce wind noise or buffeting when just one window is open, open the opposite window slightly.*

See **Power Windows** (page 72).

# At a Glance

## Electric folding mirrors



E72623

See **Electric exterior mirrors** (page 74).

## Reverse mirror dipping

Depending on the selected mirror position, the relevant exterior mirror will dip whenever you select reverse gear, giving you a view of the kerb.

When you first use this feature, the mirrors will dip to a preset position. You can programme the degree of dipping.

See **Electric exterior mirrors** (page 74).

## Blind spot information system (BLIS)

### WARNING



Do not use the system as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors, and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The system is not a replacement for careful driving and is only to be used as an aid.

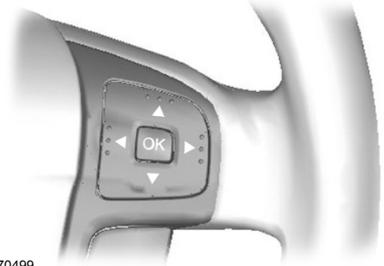
The system displays a yellow indicator located in the exterior mirrors.



E124736

See **Blind Spot Monitor** (page 76).

## Information displays



E70499

Use the arrow buttons to navigate through the menus and press **OK** to make a selection.

See **Information Displays** (page 85).

## Manual climate control

### Cooling the interior quickly



E71381

# At a Glance

## Heating the interior quickly



E71377

## Recommended settings for cooling



E131534

Open the centre and side air vents.  
Direct the centre air vents upwards and the side air vents toward the side windows.

## Recommended settings for heating



E131535

Close the centre air vents and open the side air vents.  
Direct the side air vents toward the side windows.

## Defrosting and demisting the windscreen



E71382

See **Manual Climate Control** (page 109).

## Automatic climate control



E91391

See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 111).

## Engine idle speed after starting

The engine may idle at a higher speed than normal immediately after starting from cold.

See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 133).

## Keyless starting



E85766

Press the start button.

# At a Glance

## Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be OFF.

Press and hold the start button for two seconds, or press three times within three seconds.

See **Keyless Starting** (page 133).

## Diesel particulate filter (DPF)

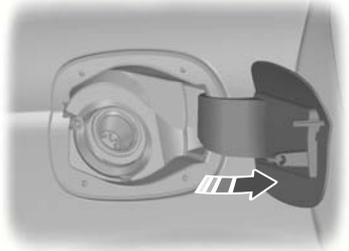
### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

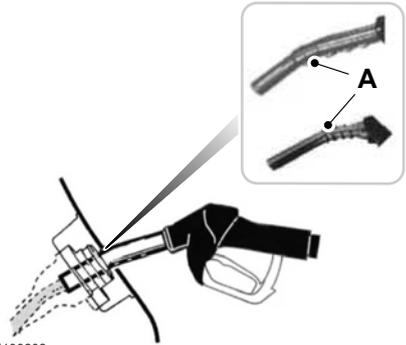
See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 138).

## Fuel filler flap



E86613

Press the flap to open it. Open the flap fully until it engages.



E139202

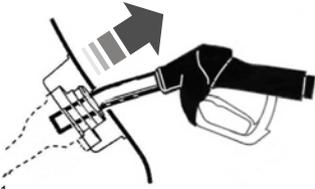
Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle **A**. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.

### WARNING



We recommend that you remove the fuel nozzle slowly to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Alternatively you can wait 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle.

# At a Glance



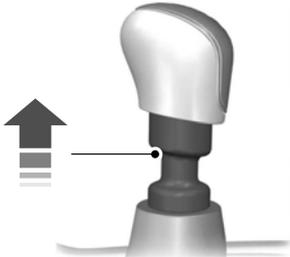
E119081

Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

See **Fuel filler flap** (page 144).

## Manual transmission

### Selecting reverse gear



E99067

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear.

See **Manual Transmission** (page 151).

## Automatic transmission

**Note:** Do not press the brake pedal when removing the key from the ignition switch.

### Selector lever positions

#### WARNING



Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.



E80836

- P Park
- R Reverse
- N Neutral
- D Drive
- S Manual shifting and sport mode

See **Automatic Transmission** (page 151).

## Rear view camera

#### WARNING



The camera does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The camera is a visual aid for use when reversing.

# At a Glance



E99105

See **Rear view camera** (page 162).

## Speed limiter

The system allows you to set a speed, to which the vehicle then becomes limited.

See **Speed Limiter** (page 173).

## Driver alert

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The system calculates an alertness score which can be displayed on the information display. If the system detects that you are becoming drowsy or there is deterioration in your driving style then warnings will be issued.

See **Driver Alert** (page 175).

## Lane departure warning

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Activate the system using the switches on the indicator stalk.



E131360

A System on

B System off

See **Lane Departure Warning** (page 177).

## Towing the vehicle on four wheels

### CAUTION



For certain engine and transmission combinations, it is recommended not to tow the vehicle with the drive wheels on the ground.

See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 206).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SEATS



E133140



E68916

### WARNINGS

-  Secure children that are less than 150 centimetres (59 inches) tall in a suitable, approved child restraint, in the rear seat.
-  Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!
-  Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.
-  Do not modify child restraints in any way.
-  Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

### WARNINGS

-  Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle.
-  If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, have the child restraints checked by properly trained technicians.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from your Dealer.

### Child restraints for different mass groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

#### Baby safety seat



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 13 kilograms (29 pounds) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) in the rear seat.

# Child Safety

## Child safety seat



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 13 and 18 kilograms (29 and 40 pounds) in a child safety seat (Group 1) in the rear seat.

## BOOSTER SEATS

### WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seat belt.
-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seat belt that is slack or twisted.
-  Do not put the seat belt under your child's arm or behind its back.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.
-  Secure children that weigh more than 15 kilograms (33 pounds) but are less than 150 centimetres (59 inches) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

### CAUTION

-  When using a child seat on a rear seat, make sure that the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 124).

## Booster seat (Group 2)



E70710

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seat belt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.

# Child Safety

## Booster cushion (Group 3)



E68924

## CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

### WARNINGS

-  Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

### WARNINGS

-  Original text according to ECE R94.01: Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!
-  When using a child restraint with a support leg on a second row seat, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.
-  When using a forward facing child seat on a second row seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 124).
-  When using a child seat with a seat belt, make sure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

**Note:** *When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearwards position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seat belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 121).*

# Child Safety

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 10 kg	Up to 13 kg	9 - 18 kg	15 - 25 kg	22 - 36 kg
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b>	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>
Rear seats	U	U	U	U	U

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

**U<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.

**UF<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.

## ISOFIX child seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories	
		0+	1
		Rear facing	Forward facing
		Up to 13 kg	9 - 18 kg
Front seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped	
	Seat type		
Rear outboard seat ISOFIX	Size class	C, D, E*	A, B, B1, C, D*
	Seat type	IL**	IL, IU <sup>F***</sup>

## Child Safety

<b>Seating positions</b>		<b>Mass group categories</b>	
		<b>O+</b>	<b>1</b>
		<b>Rear facing</b>	<b>Forward facing</b>
		<b>Up to 13 kg</b>	<b>9 - 18 kg</b>
Rear centre seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped	
	Seat type		

**IL** Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the **semi-universal** category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

**IUF** Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of **universal** category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

\*The ISOFIX size class for both **universal** and **semi-universal** child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters **A** to **G**. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.

\*\* At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

\*\*\* At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

# Child Safety

## ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS

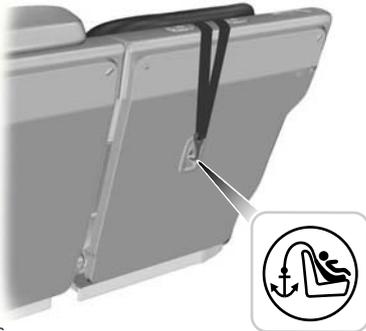
### WARNING

 Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

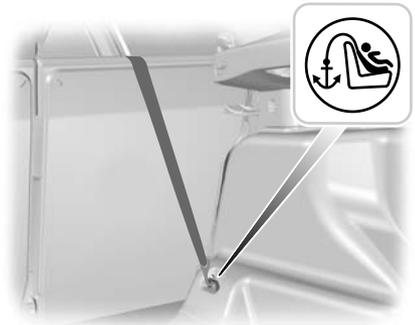
Your vehicle is fitted with ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are fitted behind the outboard rear seats for child restraints with a top tether.

### Top tether anchor points



E87146



E93616



E93514

### Attaching a child seat with top tethers

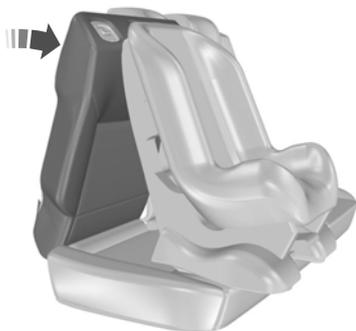
### WARNING

 Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 182).

**Note:** On 4-door vehicles, make sure the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged.

# Child Safety



E87591

1. Place the child seat on the back seat cushion and fold the relevant seatback forwards. See **Rear Seats** (page 124).
2. Remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 124).

## WARNING



Make sure the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

3. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.

## WARNING



Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

4. Push the seatback to the upright position.



E87145

5. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
6. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

### WARNING



You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

### Manual child safety locks

**Note:** On vehicles with keyless entry, use the spare key. See **Keyless Entry** (page 41).

# Child Safety



E78298

## Left-hand side

Turn anti-clockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

## Right-hand side

Turn clockwise to lock and anti-clockwise to unlock.

## Electric child safety locks

**Note:** Pressing the switch will also disable the rear electric window switches.



E124779

# Occupant protection

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Airbags

#### WARNINGS

 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

 Original text according to ECE R94.01: Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

 Wear a seat belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 121).

 Have repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seat belts carried out by a properly trained technician.

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers.

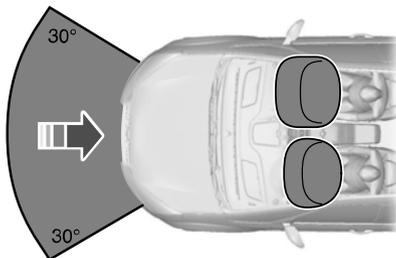
 Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

 Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by a properly trained technician.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

**Note:** Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

### Driver and front passenger airbags



#### E74302

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the driver and front passenger airbags will not deploy.

### Driver knee airbag

#### CAUTION

 Do not attempt to open the driver knee airbag cover.

The driver knee airbag will deploy during frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

# Occupant protection

**Note:** The knee airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag deploys.

## Side airbags

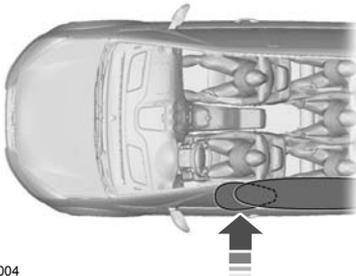


E72658

Side airbags are fitted inside the seatback of the front seats. A label indicates that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

The side airbags will deploy during significant lateral collisions. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the chest and shoulder areas. During minor lateral collisions, overturns, front collisions and rear collisions, the side airbags will not deploy.

## Curtain airbags



E75004

Curtain airbags are fitted inside the trim panels over the front and rear side windows. Moulded badges in the B-pillar trim panels indicate that curtain airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

The curtain airbags will deploy during significant lateral collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the head. During minor lateral collisions, front collisions, rear collisions, or overturns the curtain airbags will not deploy.

## Seat belts

### WARNINGS

 Wear a seat belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position to achieve its optimum effect. See

**Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 121).

 Never use a seat belt for more than one person.

 Use the correct buckle for each seat belt.

 Do not use a seat belt that is slack or twisted.

 Do not wear thick clothing. The seat belt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.

 Position the shoulder strap of the seat belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

# Occupant protection

The driver and front passenger seat belt retractors are fitted with a seat belt pretensioner. Seat belt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will deploy.

## Status after a collision

### WARNING



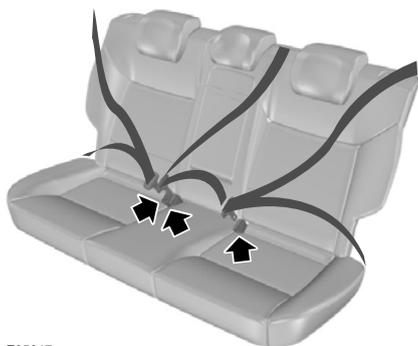
Seat belts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

## FASTENING THE SEAT BELTS

### WARNING



Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seat belt properly if you do not hear a click.



E85817

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly.

## SEAT BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT



E74124



E87511

**Note:** *Lifting the slider slightly while pressing the locking button makes it easier to release the locking mechanism.*

To raise or lower, press the locking button on the adjuster and move as necessary.

# Occupant protection

## SEAT BELT REMINDER

### WARNING



The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seat belt properly.

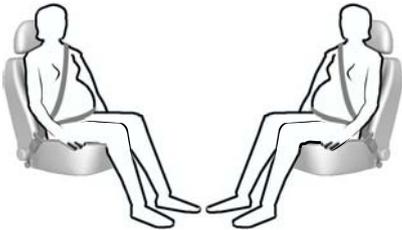


The seat belt reminder warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's or front seat passenger's seat belt has not been fastened and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed. It will also illuminate if the driver's or front seat passenger's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving. The audible warning and warning lamp will go off after seven minutes.

## Deactivating the seat belt reminder

See your dealer.

## USING SEAT BELTS DURING PREGNANCY



E68587

### WARNING



Position the seat belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Position the lap strap comfortably across your hips and low beneath your pregnant abdomen. Position the shoulder strap between your breasts, above and to the side of your pregnant abdomen.

## DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

### WARNING



Make sure that the passenger airbag is disabled when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.



E71313

## Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch

### WARNING



If you need to fit a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it, have a passenger airbag deactivation switch fitted. Ask your dealer for further information.

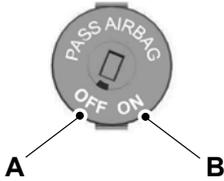
**Note:** The key switch is located in the glove compartment with an airbag deactivation lamp in the instrument panel.

# Occupant protection

---

If the airbag warning lamp illuminates or flashes when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81). Remove the child restraint and have the system checked immediately.

## Disabling the passenger airbag



E71312

- A Disabled
- B Enabled

Turn the switch to position **A**.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.

## Enabling the passenger airbag

### WARNING



Make sure that the passenger airbag is enabled when you are **not** using a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

---

Turn the switch to position **B**.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

### CAUTIONS

**!** The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**!** Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended. This will safeguard against any potential malicious frequency blocking.

**Note:** You could unlock the doors if you press the buttons on the remote control unintentionally.

The operating range between your remote control and your vehicle varies depending on the environment.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can programme a maximum of eight remote controls to use with your vehicle (including any supplied with your vehicle).

### Programming a new remote control

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Cycle the key from position **0** to **II** and then back to **0** four times within six seconds.
3. Leave the key in position **0** and press any button on the remote control within 10 seconds. You will receive confirmation via a chime or LED that programming has been successful.

**Note:** Further remote controls may be programmed at this stage.

4. Press any button on each additional remote control within 10 seconds of each other.

### Reprogramming the unlocking function

**Note:** When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver's door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote key simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

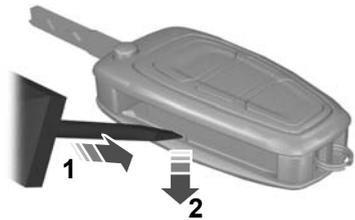
## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

### Remote control with a folding key blade



E128809

# Keys and Remote Controls

1. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



E128810

3. Carefully remove the cover.



E128811

4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.
5. Install a new battery (3V CR2032) with the + facing upwards.
6. Replace the battery cover.

## Remote control without a folding key blade



E87964

1. Press and hold the pushbuttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.



E105362

3. Twist a flat bladed screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

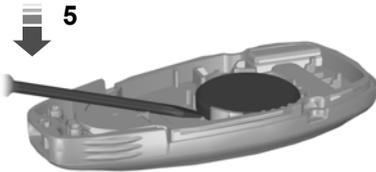


E119190

## Keys and Remote Controls

---

- Carefully insert the screwdriver in the position shown to open the remote control.



E125860

### CAUTION

-  Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.
- 

- Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.
- Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the **+** facing downwards.
- Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
- Install the key blade.

# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

### CAUTION

 Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

### Central locking

You can only centrally lock the doors if they are all closed.

**Note:** The driver's door can be unlocked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control or keyless entry is not functioning.

**Note:** Central locking also locks and unlocks the fuel filler flap.

### Double locking

#### WARNING

 Do not activate double locking when persons or animals are inside the vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.



E71961

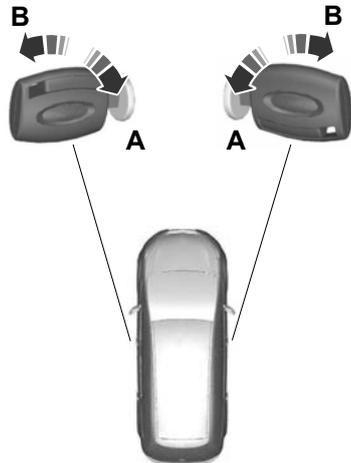
Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if they are all closed.

### Locking and unlocking confirmation

When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

When you lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash twice.

### Locking and unlocking the doors with the key



E71962

A Unlock

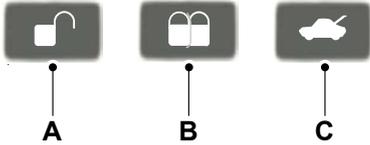
B Lock

### Double locking the doors with the key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds to double lock the doors.

# Locks

## Locking and unlocking the doors and the luggage compartment lid with the remote control



E87379

- A Unlock
- B Lock
- C Luggage compartment lid unlock (press twice)

## Locking the doors and the luggage compartment lid with the remote control

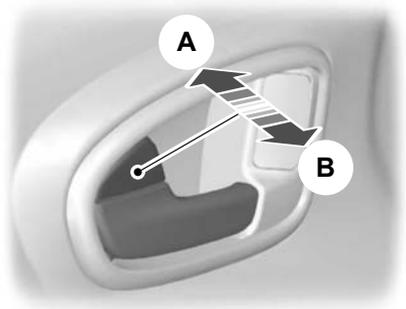
Press button **B** once.

## Double locking the doors and the luggage compartment lid with the remote control

Press button **B** twice within three seconds.

## Locking and unlocking the doors from inside

### Driver's door



E71958

- A Lock all doors
- B Unlock all doors

### Front and rear passenger doors



E98653

To lock the front and rear passenger doors individually, press the button and close the door when leaving the vehicle.

# Locks

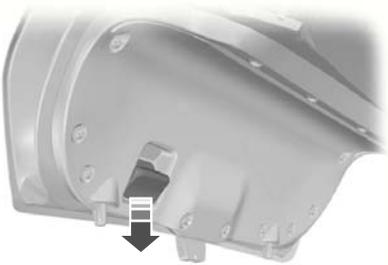
## Luggage compartment lid

### Opening the luggage compartment lid with the remote control

Press button **C** on the remote control twice within three seconds.

### Closing the luggage compartment lid

#### 4-door



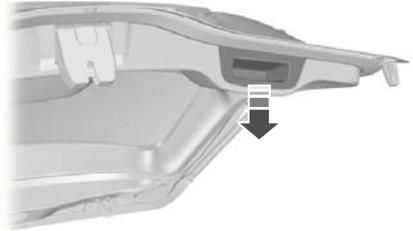
E89131

#### 5-door



E89132

#### Estate



E89133

A recessed grip is incorporated inside the luggage compartment lid to facilitate closing.

### Automatic relocking

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

### Reprogramming the unlocking function

The unlocking function may be reprogrammed so that only the driver's door is unlocked. See **Programming the remote control** (page 35).

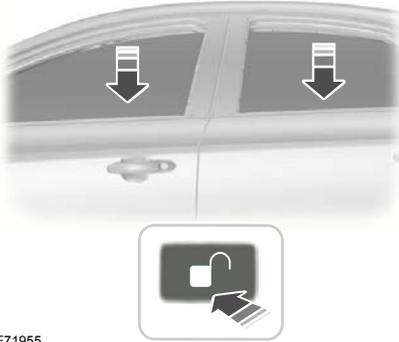
## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the electric windows with the ignition off via the global opening and global closing function.

**Note:** *Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See **Power Windows** (page 72).*

# Locks

## Global opening



E71955

To open all the windows, press and hold the **unlock** button for at least three seconds. Press either the **lock** or the **unlock** button again to stop the opening function.

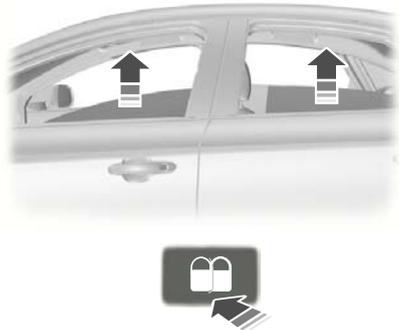
## Global closing

### Vehicles without keyless entry

#### WARNING



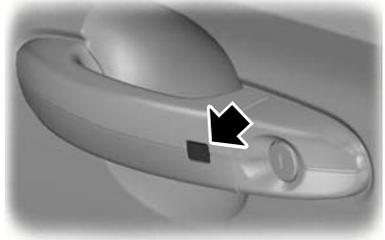
Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press a button immediately to stop.



E71956

To close all the windows, press and hold the **lock** button for at least three seconds. Press any button again to stop the closing function. The anti-trap function is also active during global closing.

### Vehicles with keyless entry



E87384

#### WARNING



Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press the button on the driver's door handle to stop.

**Note:** *Global closing can be activated using the button on the driver's door handle. Global opening and closing can also be activated using the buttons on the passive key.*

To close all the windows, press and hold the button on the driver's door handle for at least two seconds. The anti-trap function is also active during global closing.

## KEYLESS ENTRY

### General information

#### WARNING



The keyless entry system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

# Locks

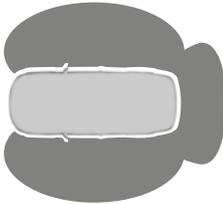
**Note:** If the door handles are pulled repeatedly during a short period of time without the presence of a valid passive key, the system will become inoperable for 30 seconds.

The passive entry system will not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

**Note:** If the passive entry system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The keyless system allows the driver to operate the vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately one and a half metres from the driver and front passenger door handles and the luggage compartment lid.

## Passive key

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. The passive key can also be used as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).

## Locking the vehicle

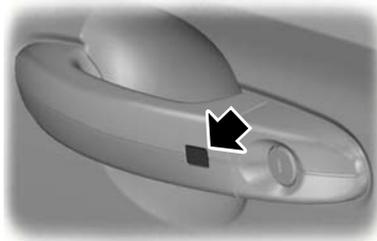
### WARNING



The vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If no locking button is pressed, the vehicle will remain unlocked.

**Note:** The ignition will automatically switch off when you lock your vehicle from the outside. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** If locking from the luggage compartment lid, the passive key must be within the luggage compartment lid detection range.



E87384



E87385

Locking buttons are located on each of the front doors and the luggage compartment lid.

# Locks

To activate central locking and arm the alarm:

- Press a locking button once.

To activate double locking, to arm the alarm and the interior sensors:

- Press a locking button twice within three seconds.

**Note:** *Once activated, the vehicle will remain locked for approximately three seconds. This is to allow you to pull a door handle and check if the vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, the doors can be opened again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.*

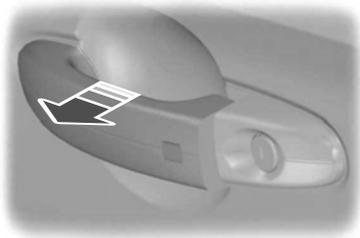
## Luggage compartment lid

**Note:** *The luggage compartment lid cannot be closed and will pop back up if the passive key is located inside the luggage compartment.*

**Note:** *If a second valid passive key is located within the luggage compartment lid detection range, the luggage compartment lid can be closed.*

## Unlocking the vehicle

**Note:** *If the vehicle remains locked for longer than five days, the system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of the vehicle battery. When the vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. Unlocking the vehicle once will deactivate the energy-saving mode.*



E78278

Pull one of the door handles or the luggage compartment lid handle.

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.*

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors, the luggage compartment lid and the fuel filler flap have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

## Unlocking only the driver's door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver's door is unlocked ( See **Keys and Remote Controls** (page 35) ), note the following:

If the driver's door is the first door which is opened, the other doors and the luggage compartment lid will remain locked. Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

If the front passenger door or one of the rear doors is the first door which is opened, **all** the doors and the luggage compartment lid will be unlocked.

## Disabled keys

Any keys left inside the vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

A disabled key cannot be used to turn the ignition on or start the engine.

In order to use these passive keys again, they have to be enabled.

# Locks

---

To enable all your passive keys, unlock the vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if the ignition is turned on or the vehicle is started using a valid key.

## Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade



E87964

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

# Engine immobiliser

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The engine immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, this indicates a malfunction. The message **Immobiliser active** will appear in the information display when you switch on the ignition. Have the immobiliser checked immediately.

## CODED KEYS

**Note:** Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognising your key as a valid one.

**Note:** Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Ask your dealer for further information. Have replacement keys recoded together with your existing keys.

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from your Ford Dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain additional keys from your Ford Dealer.

## ARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILISER

The engine immobiliser is armed automatically a short time after you have switched the ignition off.

## DISARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILISER

The engine immobiliser is disarmed automatically when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If the message **Immobiliser active** appears in the information display, your key has not been recognised. Remove the key and try again.

# Alarm

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Alarm system

Your vehicle may be equipped with one of the following alarm systems:

- Perimeter alarm.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.
- Category one alarm with interior sensors, battery back-up sounder and tilt sensors.

### Perimeter alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorised access to your vehicle through the doors and the bonnet. It also protects the audio unit.

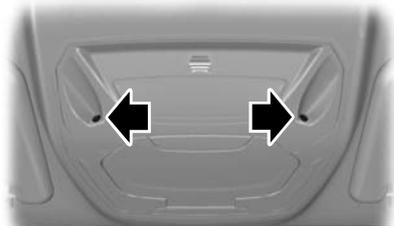
### Interior sensors

#### Vehicles without overhead console



E71401

#### Vehicles with overhead console



E131656

## WARNING



The sensors must not be covered up. Do not activate the alarm with full guard if any persons, animals or other moving objects are inside the vehicle.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorised intrusion by sensing any movement within the vehicle.

### Battery back-up sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an extra alarm system which will sound a siren when the alarm is triggered. It is armed directly when you lock the vehicle. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

### Tilt sensors

The tilt sensors detect if someone attempts to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle away by sensing changes in the inclination of the vehicle.

**Note:** When travelling on a ferry with the alarm armed, deactivate the tilt sensors by selecting reduced guard. This will prevent the alarm from being triggered by the movement.

### Triggering the alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the tailgate or the bonnet without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If the ignition is turned to position I, II or III without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within the vehicle.

# Alarm

- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.
- If the tilt sensors detect a change in the inclination of the vehicle.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Full and reduced guard

### Full guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior and tilt sensors are activated when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** This may result in false alarms if animals or moving objects are inside the vehicle or, on vehicles with tilt sensors, when travelling on a ferry.

**Note:** False alarms can also be triggered by the auxiliary heater. See **Auxiliary Heater** (page 114). If you are using the auxiliary heater, direct the air flow towards the footwell.

### Reduced guard

In reduced guard, the interior and tilt sensors are deactivated when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only. The next time you switch on the ignition, the alarm will be reset to full guard.

### Ask on Exit

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

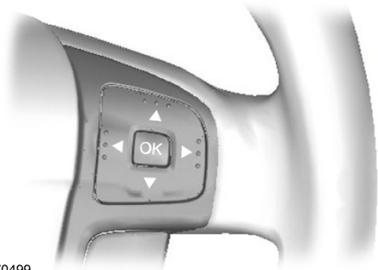
If you select **Ask on Exit**, the message **Reduced guard?** appears in the instrument cluster display each time you switch the ignition off.

If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears.

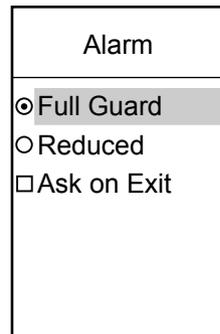
If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave the vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

## Selecting full or reduced guard

**Note:** Selecting **Reduced** does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current ignition cycle. If you regularly set the alarm to reduced guard, select **Ask on Exit**.



E70499



E74509

# Alarm

---

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Alarm** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Reduced** or **Full guard**. If you prefer to be asked each time you switch off the ignition, select **Ask on Exit**.
5. Press the **OK** button to confirm the selection.
6. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. To return to the trip computer display directly, hold the left arrow button pressed.

## Information messages

See **Information Messages** (page 98).

## ARMING THE ALARM

To arm the alarm, lock the vehicle. See **Locks** (page 38).

## DISARMING THE ALARM

### Vehicles without keyless entry

#### Perimeter alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

#### Category one alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

### Vehicles with keyless entry

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 41).

#### Perimeter alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

#### Category one alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

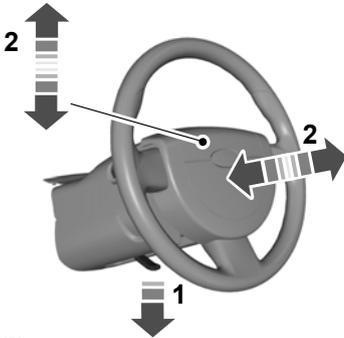
# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

### WARNING

 Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 121).



E95178

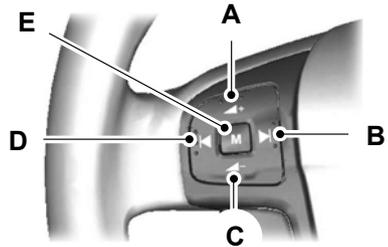


E95179

### WARNING

 Make sure that you fully engage the locking lever when returning it to its original position.

## AUDIO CONTROL



E72288

- A Volume up
- B Seek up
- C Volume down
- D Seek down
- E Mode

### Mode

Press and **hold** the mode button to select the audio source.

Press the mode button to:

- tune the radio to the next preset station
- play the next CD
- play the other side of a cassette tape
- accept an incoming telephone call.
- end a telephone call.

# Steering Wheel

---

## Seek

Press a seek button to:

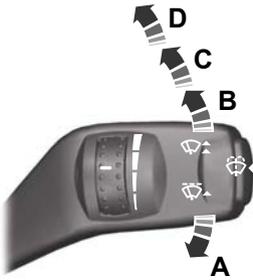
- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- play the next or the previous CD track
- fast forward or rewind the cassette tape.

Press and **hold** a seek button to:

- tune the radio up or down the frequency band
- seek through a CD track.

# Wipers and Washers

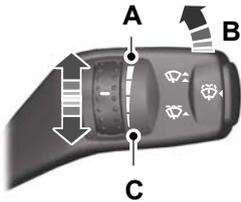
## WINDSCREEN WIPERS



E70696

- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

## Intermittent wipe



E70315

- A Short wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Long wipe interval

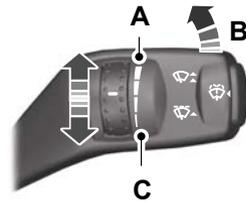
## AUTOWIPERS

### CAUTIONS

! Do not switch autowipers on in dry weather conditions. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or flies hit the windscreen.

### CAUTIONS

- ! Replace the wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears. If you do not replace them, the rain sensor will continue to detect water on the windscreen and the wipers will operate, even though the majority of the windscreen is dry.
- ! Fully defrost the windscreen in icy conditions before you switch autowipers on.
- ! Switch autowipers off before you enter a car wash.



E70315

- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

If you switch autowipers on, the wipers will not cycle until water is detected on the windscreen. The rain sensor will then continuously measure the amount of water on the windscreen and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor using the rotary control. With low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a lot of water on the windscreen. With high sensitivity, the wipers will operate if the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windscreen.

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSCREEN WASHERS

### WARNING

 Do not operate the windscreen washers for more than 10 seconds or when the reservoir is empty.

**Note:** The washer jets are heated when the ignition is on.



E70776

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Intermittent wipe



E70777

### Reverse gear wipe

The rear window wiper will operate automatically when you select reverse gear if the wiper lever is in position **B**, **C** or **D**.

### Washer

### WARNING

 Do not operate the rear window washer for more than 10 seconds or when the reservoir is empty.



E70777

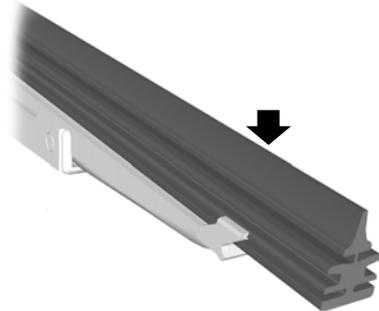
Pull the lever fully towards the steering wheel and hold it to operate the washer.

## HEADLAMP WASHERS

The headlamp washers will operate with the windscreen washers when the headlamps are on.

**Note:** To stop the washer fluid reservoir emptying quickly, the headlamp washers will not operate every time that you use the windscreen washers.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E66644

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blade lips with water applied with a soft sponge.

# Wipers and Washers

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

### Windscreen wiper blades

#### CAUTIONS

- ! Set the windscreen wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades.
- ! You can use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. Make sure that the outside of the windscreen is free from snow and ice before using the wipers.

### Service position



E85833

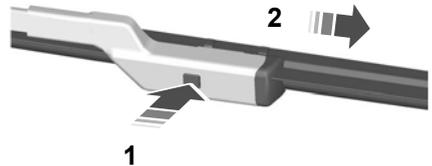


E75188

Switch off the ignition and move the wiper lever to position **A** within three seconds. Release the lever when the windscreen wipers have moved to the service position.

### Changing the windscreen wiper blades

Set the windscreen wipers in the service position and lift the wiper arms.



E72899

1. Press the locking button.
2. Remove the wiper blade.

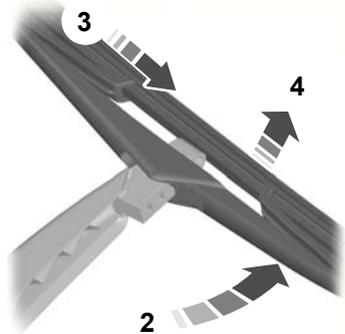
**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

3. Install in the reverse order.

### Rear window wiper blades

#### Changing the rear window wiper blades - Estate

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E86456

2. Position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.

# Wipers and Washers

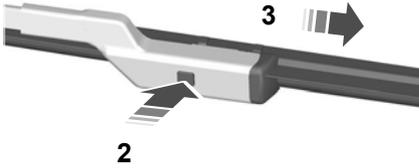
---

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

5. Install in the reverse order.

## Changing the rear window wiper blades - 5-door

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E86457

2. Press the locking button.
3. Remove the wiper blade.

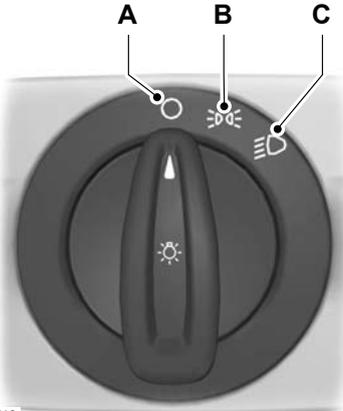
**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

4. Install in the reverse order.

# Lighting

## LIGHTING CONTROL

### Lighting control positions



E70718

- A Off
- B Side and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

### Parking lamps

#### CAUTION

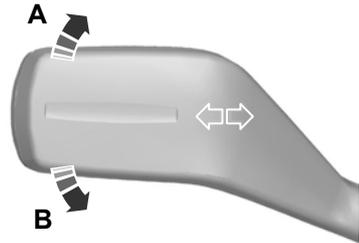
- ⚠ Prolonged use of the parking lamps will discharge the battery.

Switch off the ignition.

### Both sides

Set the lighting control to position **B**.

### One side



E75505

- A Right-hand side
- B Left-hand side

### Main and dipped beam



E70725

Pull the lever fully towards the steering wheel to switch between main and dipped beam.

### Headlamp flasher

Pull the lever slightly towards the steering wheel.

### Home safe lighting

Switch the ignition off and pull the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel to switch the headlamps on. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will go off automatically after three minutes with any door open, or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed.

# Lighting

With all doors closed, but within the 30 second delay, opening any door will result in the three minute timer starting again.

The home safe lights can be cancelled by either pulling the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel again or by turning the ignition switch on.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

The lamps will illuminate when the ignition is on.

## AUTOLAMPS



E70719

**Note:** *If you have switched autolamps on, you can only switch the main beam on when autolamps has switched the headlamps on.*

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.

## AUTOMATIC MAIN BEAM CONTROL

### WARNINGS

 The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the main beam on or off.

 A manual override may be required when approaching other road users such as cyclists.

### WARNINGS



Do not use the system in fog.

### CAUTIONS



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. A manual override may be necessary in these cases.



Reflective road signs may be detected as oncoming traffic and the headlamps may be switched to dipped beam.



If the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles (for example guard rails) the system may not deactivate the main beam.



Always fit Ford Original Parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.



Check and replace wiper blades regularly to ensure the camera sensor has a clear view through the windscreen. Replacement wiper blades must be the correct length.

**Note:** *Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

The system will automatically switch on main beam if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off main beam before it can distract other road users. Dipped beams will remain on.

A camera sensor is centrally mounted behind the windscreen of the vehicle, and monitors conditions continuously to decide when to switch the main beam off and on.

# Lighting

Once the system is active the main beam will switch on if:

- It is dark enough to require the use of main beams and
- there is no traffic or street lighting ahead and
- vehicle speed is greater than 40 km/h (25 mph).

The main beam will switch off if:

- The ambient light is high enough that main beam is not required.
- An approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps are detected.
- Street lighting is detected.
- Vehicle speed falls below 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The camera sensor is too hot or becomes blocked.

## Activating the system

Switch on the system using the information display and autolamps. See **Information Displays** (page 85). See **Autolamps** (page 56).



E70719

Turn the switch to the autolamps position.

**Note:** The system may take a short time to initialise after first switching the ignition on, especially in very dark conditions. The main beam will not automatically switch on during this period.

## Setting the system sensitivity

The system has three sensitivity levels which can be accessed via the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

The sensitivity determines the speed at which the main beam will be restored after detected traffic leaves the field of view.

## Manually overriding the system



E70725

Use the main beam lever to switch between main beam and dipped beam.

**Note:** This is a temporary override and the system will return to automatic operation after a short period.

To permanently deactivate the system use the information display menu or turn the lighting control switch from autolamps to headlamps.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E70721

### WARNING



Only use the front fog lamps when visibility is considerably restricted by fog, snow or rain.

# Lighting

## REAR FOG LAMPS



E70720

### WARNINGS



Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 50 metres (164 feet).



Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 metres (164 feet).

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING/XENON HEADLAMPS

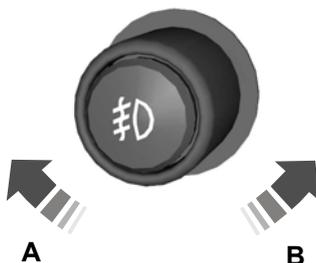
To adjust the headlamps for driving on the left or right hand side of the road, see your dealer.

### Recommended headlamp levelling switch positions

Load		Load in luggage compartment	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	-	-	0
1-2	-	-	0 (0.5 <sup>2</sup> )
1-2	3	-	1 (0.5 <sup>2</sup> )

## HEADLAMP LEVELLING

**Note:** Vehicles with Xenon headlamps are equipped with automatic headlamp levelling.



E70722

- A Raised headlamp beams
- B Lowered headlamp beams

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

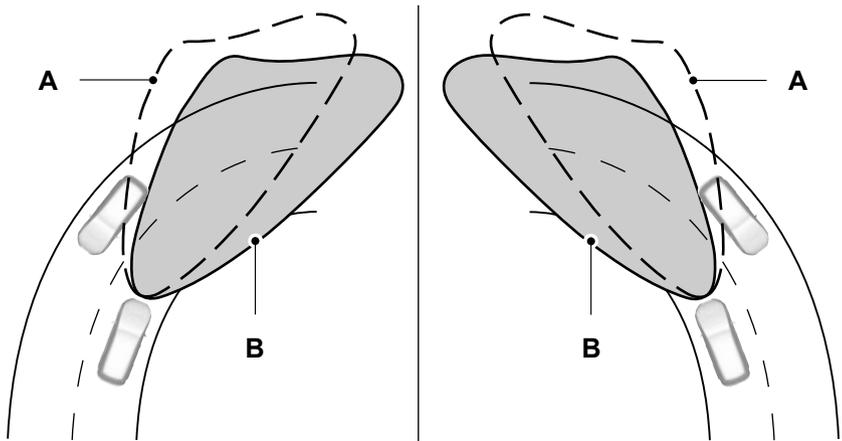
# Lighting

Load		Load in luggage compartment	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	3	Max <sup>1</sup>	3 (0.5 <sup>2</sup> )
1	-	Max <sup>1</sup>	4 (1.5 <sup>2</sup> )

<sup>1</sup> See **Vehicle identification** (page 244).

<sup>2</sup> Vehicles with active suspension.

## ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS



E72897

- A without AFS
- B with AFS

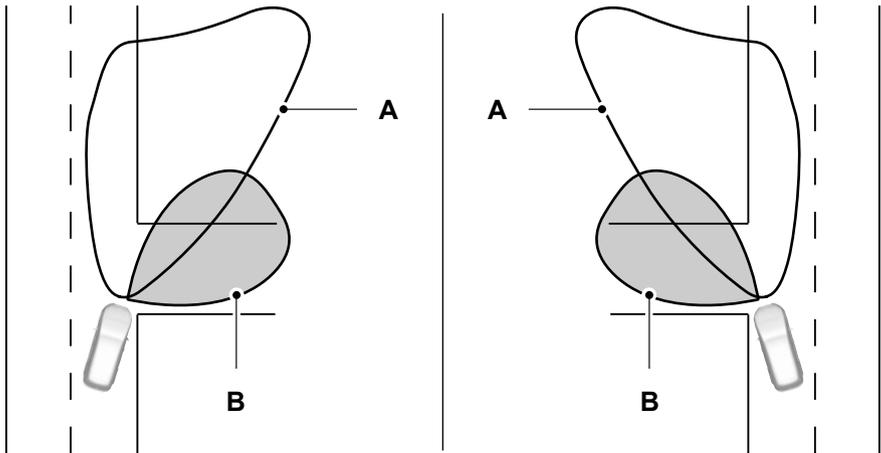
The AFS adjusts the headlamp dipped beam depending on vehicle direction and speed. It improves visibility when you are driving at night and helps to reduce headlamp glare for oncoming drivers.

The system will not operate when the vehicle is stationary, when you have switched on the daytime running lamps or when you have selected reverse gear.

# Lighting

A message will appear in the information display if the system malfunctions. See **Information Messages** (page 98). The headlamps will move to a fixed central or dipped position. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Cornering lamps



E72898

- A Headlamp beam
- B Cornering lamp beam

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

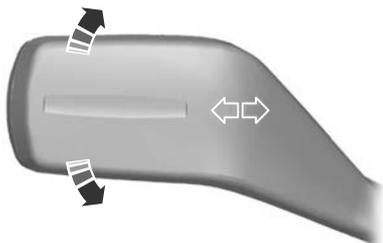
## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

# Lighting

## DIRECTION INDICATORS

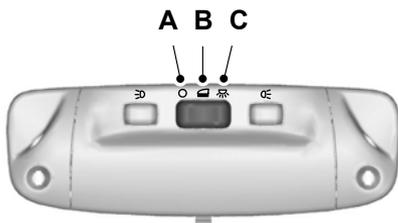


E70727

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash only three times.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Courtesy lamp



E71945

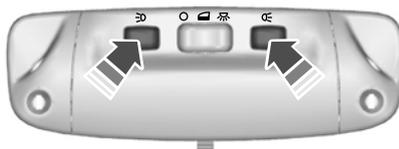
- A Off
- B Door contact
- C On

If you set the switch to position **B**, the courtesy lamp will come on when you unlock or open a door or the luggage compartment lid. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

The courtesy lamp will also come on when you switch off the ignition. It will go off automatically after a short time or when you start or restart the engine.

If you set the switch to position **C** with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will come on. It will go off automatically after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

### Reading lamps



E71946

If you switch off the ignition, the reading lamps will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

### LED Interior lighting

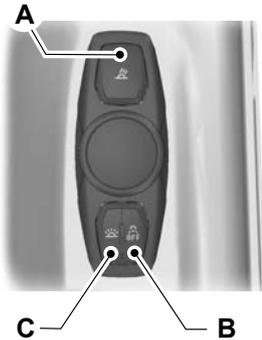
**Note:** Individual lamps may be switched on independently, but not off if all lamps have been switched on by the driver.

**Note:** All other lamps will be either non-switchable or with individual reading or dome lamp functionality only.

# Lighting

The lamps will come on when you unlock or open a door or the luggage compartment lid. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, all lamps will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

## Side mounted lamp



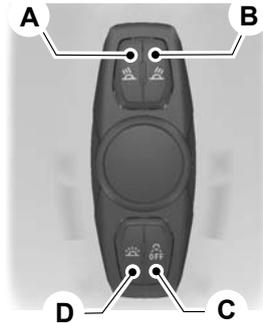
E139419

- A Reading lamp on and off switch
- B Door function switch
- C All lamps on and off switch

If you press switch **B** all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch **C**.

## Centre mounted lamp



E139420

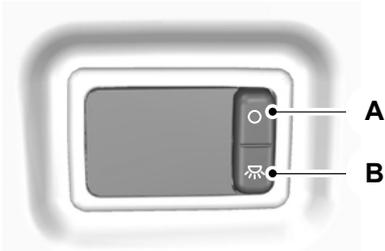
- A Right-hand side reading lamp on and off switch
- B Left-hand side reading lamp on and off switch
- C Door function switch
- D All lamps on and off switch

If you press switch **C** all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch **D**.

# Lighting

## Vanity mirror lamps



E72900

- A Off
- B On

If you switch off the ignition, the vanity mirror lamps will go off automatically after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

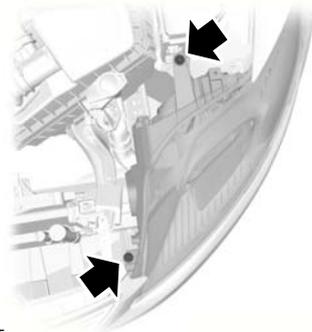
## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

### WARNING



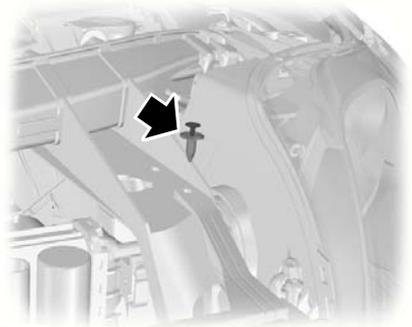
Have Xenon bulbs changed by a trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.

1. Open the bonnet. See **Opening and Closing the Bonnet** (page 208).



E85995

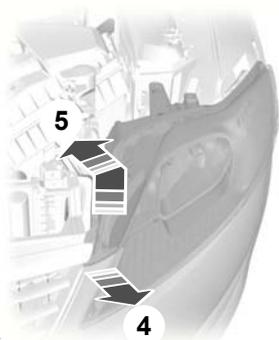
2. Remove the screws.



E88843

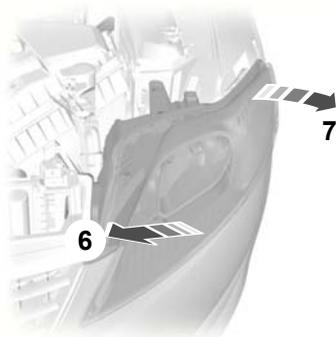
3. Remove the plastic screw and retainer.

# Lighting



E85996

4. Carefully pull the corner of the grille and bumper towards the front of the vehicle.
5. Carefully lift the corner of the headlamp and push it as far as possible towards the back of the vehicle.



E88982

6. Carefully pull the headlamp towards the centre of the vehicle, behind the grille and bumper, to disengage it from the lower outer fixing point.
7. Remove the headlamp.

## CAUTION

- ! When fitting the headlamp, take care not to damage the locating points.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you fully engage the headlamp in the lower outer fixing point.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, tighten the front screw first and then the rear screw.

## CHANGING A BULB

### WARNINGS



Switch the lights and the ignition off.



Let the bulb cool down before removing it.



Have Xenon bulbs changed by a trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.

### CAUTIONS



Do not touch the glass of the bulb.



Only fit bulbs of the correct specification. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 70).

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

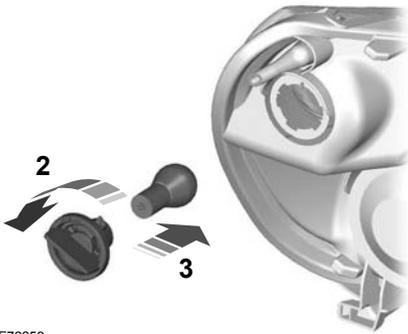
### Headlamp

**Note:** Remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.

### Direction indicator

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 63).

# Lighting

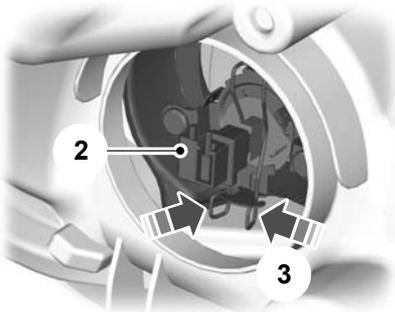


E72259

2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
3. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

## Headlamp main beam

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 63).

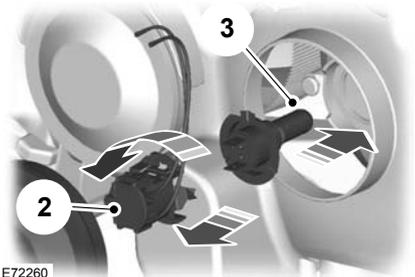


E72261

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Headlamp dipped beam

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 63).

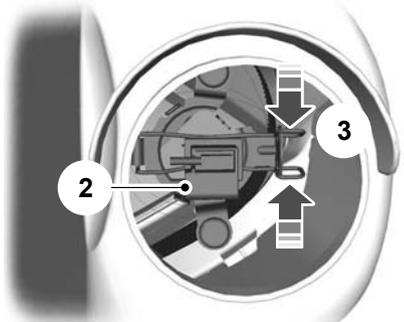


E72260

2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Cornering lamp

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 63).



E72262

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Daytime running lamps

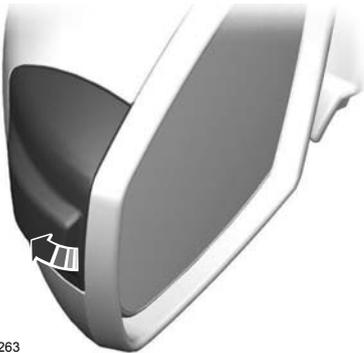
**Note:** *These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.*

# Lighting



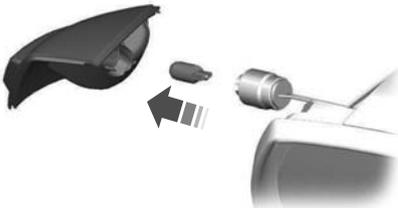
E131653

## Side repeater



E72263

1. Carefully remove the side repeater.



E72291

2. Remove the bulb holder.

3. Remove the bulb.

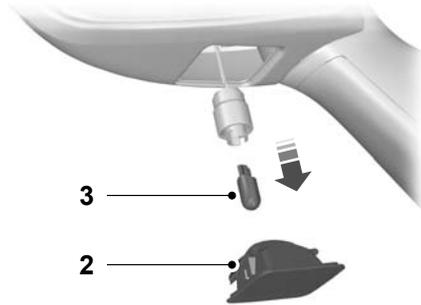
## Approach lamp

**Note:** Position the mirror glass as far inwards as possible.



E72264

1. Insert a screwdriver into the gap between the mirror housing and the mirror glass and release the metal retaining clip.

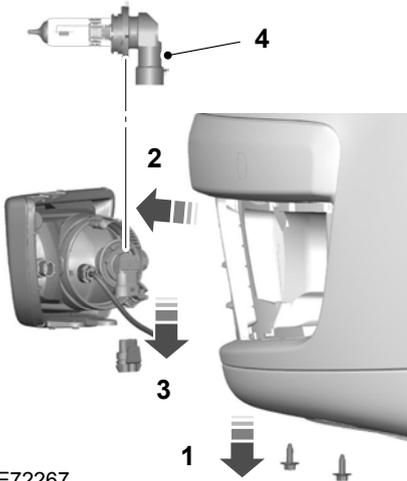


E72265

2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

# Lighting

## Front fog lamps



E72267

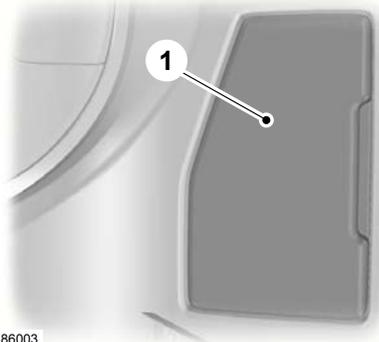
**Note:** You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

**Note:** Do not remove the screws.

1. Loosen the screws.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.

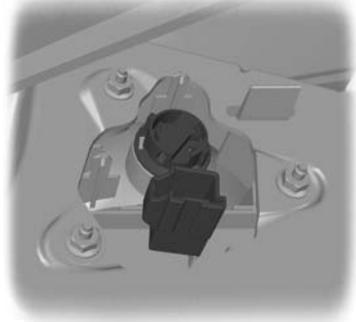
## Rear lamps

### Direction indicator



E86003

1. Remove the trim panel.



E131687

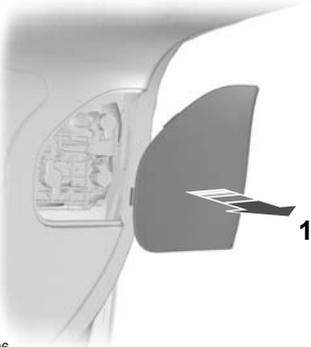
2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
3. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

### Tail and brake lamp

**Note:** These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.

# Lighting

## Reversing lamp and fog lamp



E86006

1. Remove the trim panel.



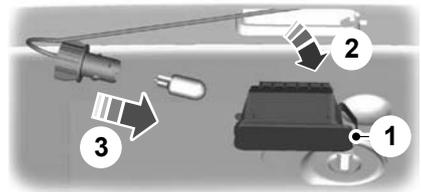
E131688

2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
3. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

## Central high mounted brake lamp

**Note:** *These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.*

## Number plate lamp



E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Interior lamps

### Vehicles with LED lamps

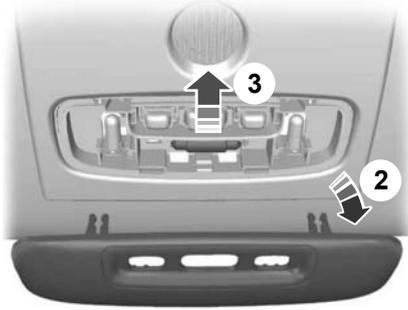
**Note:** *These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.*



E131655

# Lighting

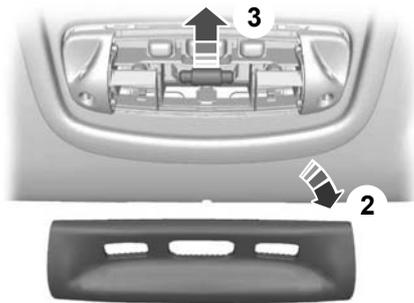
## Vehicles without interior sensors



E72788

1. Carefully prise out the lens.
2. Remove the lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Vehicles with interior sensors

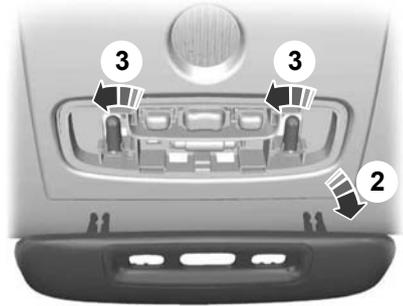


E72787

1. Carefully prise out the lens.
2. Remove the lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Reading lamps

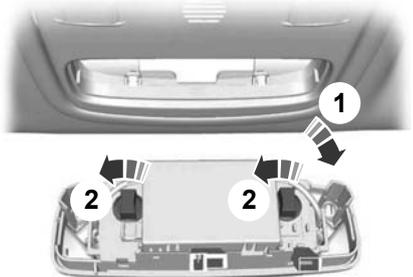
### Vehicles without interior sensors



E72796

1. Carefully prise out the lens.
2. Remove the lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

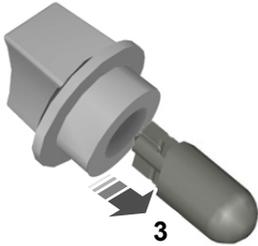
### Vehicles with interior sensors



E72786

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.

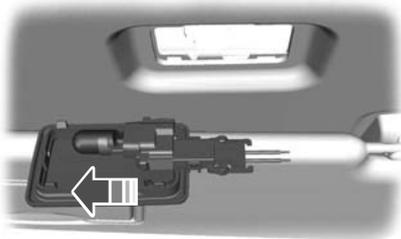
# Lighting



E73939

3. Remove the bulb.

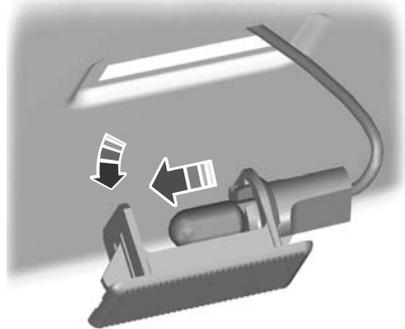
## Vanity mirror lamp



E72785

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

## Luggage compartment lamp



E72784

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front direction indicator	PY21W	21
Headlamp main beam	H1	55
Headlamp dipped beam	H7	55
Cornering lamp	H1	55
Side repeater	W5W	5
Approach lamp	W5W	5
Front fog lamp	H8	35
Side lamp	W5W	5

# Lighting

---

<b>Lamp</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Power (watt)</b>
Rear direction indicator	PY21W	21
Rear fog lamp	H21W	21
Reversing lamp	P21W	21
Number plate lamp	W5W	5
Interior lamp	Festoon	10
Reading lamp	BA9s	5
Vanity mirror lamp	W5W	5
Luggage compartment lamp	W6W	6

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

### WARNING

 Do not operate the electric windows unless they are free from obstruction.

**Note:** If you operate the switches often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

**Note:** You can operate the windows for several minutes after you switch off the ignition. They will be deactivated as soon as a door is opened.

**Note:** If you operate both the switch on the relevant door and the switch for that window on the driver's door at the same time, the window will stop moving.

Switch on the ignition to operate the electric windows.

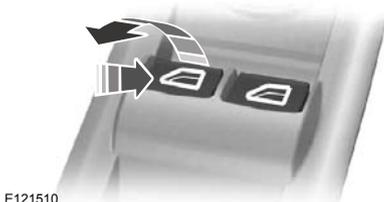
### Global opening and global closing

You can also operate the electric windows with the ignition off via the global opening and global closing function. See **Global Opening and Closing** (page 40).

**Note:** Global opening and global closing will open or close the windows automatically only on vehicles equipped with four electric windows.

**Note:** Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window.

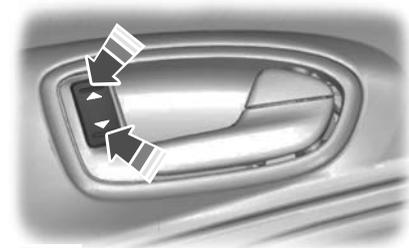
## Driver's door switches



E121510

You can operate all the windows with the switches on the door trim panel of the driver's door.

## Front and rear passengers' door switches



E70849

## Opening and closing the windows automatically

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the windows.

## Safety switch for rear windows

### WARNING

 On some vehicles, pressing the switch will also lock the rear doors from inside. See **Child Safety Locks** (page 28).

**Note:** You can always operate the rear windows from the driver's door.

# Windows and Mirrors



E121511

A switch in the driver's door disables the rear electric window switches.

The light in the switch illuminates and the lights in the rear window switches go off when the rear windows are disabled.

## Anti-trap function

### WARNING



Careless closing of the windows can override the protection function and cause injuries.

The electric windows will stop automatically while closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

## Overriding the anti-trap function

### CAUTION



While you close the window for the third time, the anti-trap function is disabled. Make sure there are no obstacles in the way of the closing window.

To override this protection function when there is a resistance, for example, in the winter, proceed as follows:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the resistance and let it reverse.

2. Close the window a third time to the resistance. The anti-trap function is disabled and you cannot close the window automatically. The window will override the resistance and you can close it fully.
3. If the window does not close after the third attempt, have it checked by a properly trained technician.

## Resetting the memory of the electric windows

### WARNING



The anti-trap function is deactivated until you have reset the memory.

After the battery has been disconnected from the vehicle you must reset the memory separately for each window:

1. Lift the switch until the window is fully closed. Hold the switch lifted for one more second.
2. Release the switch and lift it again, two or three times, for one more second.
3. Open the window and try to close it automatically.
4. Reset and repeat procedure if the window does not close automatically.

## Safety mode

### WARNING



The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure.

If the system detects a malfunction, it enters a safety mode. The windows will move for only about 0.5 seconds at a time and then stop again. Close the windows by pressing the switch again when the windows stop moving. Have this checked immediately.

# Windows and Mirrors

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### WARNING



Do not overestimate the distance of the objects that you see in the convex mirror. Objects seen in convex mirrors will appear smaller and further away than they actually are.

### Manual folding mirrors

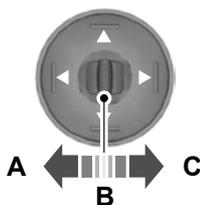
#### Folding

Push the mirror towards the door window glass.

#### Unfolding

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

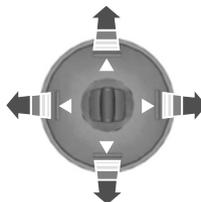
## ELECTRIC EXTERIOR MIRRORS



E70846

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Off
- C Right-hand mirror

## Mirror tilting positions



E70847

The electric exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 113).

### Electric folding mirrors

#### Automatic folding and unfolding

**Note:** *If the mirrors have been folded using the manual fold button they can only be unfolded using the manual fold button.*

The mirrors will fold automatically when you lock the vehicle with the key, the remote control or a keyless entry system request. The mirrors will unfold when you unlock the vehicle with the key, the remote control, a keyless entry system request, the driver's interior door handle or starting the engine.

#### Manual folding and unfolding

The electric folding mirrors operate with the ignition on.

**Note:** *You can operate the mirrors (mirror tilting and folding) for several minutes after you switch off the ignition. They will be deactivated as soon as a door is opened.*

# Windows and Mirrors



E72623

Press the button to fold or unfold the mirrors.

If you press the switch again while the mirrors are moving, they will stop and reverse the direction of movement.

**Note:** *When the mirrors are operated often during a short period of time, the system may become inoperable for a period of time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

## Reverse mirror dipping

Depending on the switch position (**A** or **C**), the relevant exterior mirror will dip whenever you select reverse gear, giving you a view of the kerb.

**Note:** *You can disable this feature by leaving the switch in position **B**.*

The exterior mirror will return to the original position:

- If the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Approximately 10 seconds after reverse gear has been disengaged.
- If the switch is returned to position **B**.

When you first use this feature, the mirror will dip to a preset position. This position can be adjusted using the following sequence:

1. Turn the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
2. Select the desired exterior mirror (**A** or **C**).
3. Select reverse gear, the selected exterior mirror will adjust to a preset position.
4. Adjust the mirror to the required dipped position.
5. Disengage reverse gear or press and hold the desired memory pre-set button until a single chime sounds to confirm. See **Memory Function** (page 130).

The settings will be stored automatically.

## AUTO-DIMMING MIRROR



E71028

The auto-dimming mirror will adjust automatically when hit by glaring light from behind. It will not work when you have selected reverse gear.

# Windows and Mirrors

## BLIND SPOT MONITOR

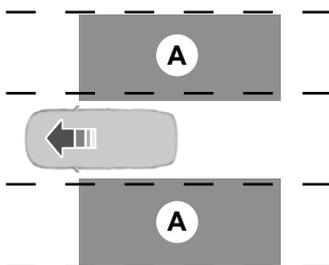
### Blind spot information system (BLIS)

#### WARNINGS

 The system is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects. The system only provides a warning to assist you in detecting vehicles in the blind spot zones. The system will not detect obstacles, pedestrians, motorcyclists or cyclists.

 Do not use the system as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors, and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The system is not a replacement for careful driving and is only to be used as an aid.

The system is a convenience feature that aids the driver in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of the vehicle extending rearwards from the exterior mirrors to approximately 3 metres (10 feet) beyond the bumper. The system will alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone whilst driving.



E124788

### Using the system

The system displays a yellow indicator located in the exterior mirrors.



E124736

**Note:** Both indicators will illuminate briefly when you switch the ignition on to confirm that the system is operational.

**Note:** On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system is active only in **S**, **D** and **N**.

The system is only active when you exceed 10 km/h (6 mph). The system is temporarily deactivated when you select reverse gear.

### System detection and alerts

The system will trigger the alert for vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the rear or merge from the side. Vehicles that you pass, or vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the front, will only trigger the alert after the vehicle has remained in the blind spot zone for a short period of time.

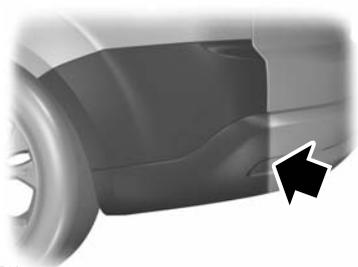
**Note:** Vehicles that pass through the blind zone quickly (typically less than 2 seconds) will not trigger the alert.

The system consists of two radar sensors each located behind the rear wheels hidden behind the bumpers.

#### CAUTIONS

-  Do not place items such as bumper stickers in this area.
-  Repairs to these areas using body filler will affect the performance of the system.

# Windows and Mirrors



E124741

## Detection limitations

There may be certain instances where vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zones may not be detected.

Instances which may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear bumper panels in the area of the sensors.
- Certain manoeuvring of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at high speed.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Several vehicles passing through the blind zone following each other closely.

## False alerts

**Note:** *False alerts are temporary and will self correct.*

There may be certain instances when the system will alert with no vehicle present in the blind zone.

Circumstances where false alerts may occur:

- Road guardrails.
- Motorway concrete walls.
- Construction areas.
- Sharp turns around a building.
- Bushes and trees.

- Cyclists and motorcyclists.
- Coming to a stop with a vehicle directly behind but very close.

## Turning the system on and off

**Note:** *The on or off position will remain until manually changed.*

You can turn the system on and off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

When you turn the system off no further alerts will be received. The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

## Detection errors

**Note:** *The alert indicator in the mirror will not illuminate.*

If the system senses a fault on either sensor, the system warning symbol will illuminate and remain on. The information display will confirm the fault and indicate whether the left or right side is affected.

## Blocked sensor

### WARNING



Prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and issuing a warning, the number of missed objects will increase.

### CAUTION



The sensors may not detect vehicles in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

**Note:** *Keep the rear bumper area surrounding the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow.*

If a sensor becomes blocked the system performance may degrade. A blocked sensor message may be displayed.

## Windows and Mirrors

---

The system will automatically return to normal operation once two other vehicles have been detected on both sides.

### Trailer towing false alerts

#### CAUTION

 Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly be detected. Switch the system off to avoid false alerts. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

---

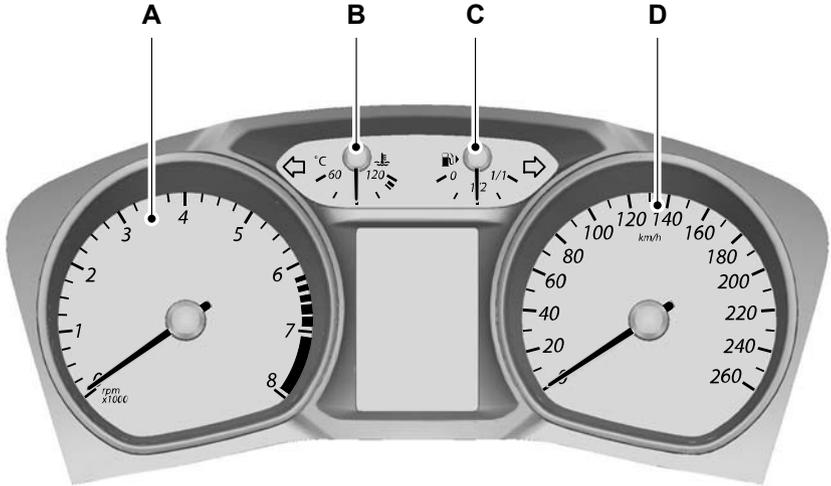
If the vehicle is fitted with a trailer tow module approved by us, the system will detect a connected trailer and deactivate. A confirmation message will be shown in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 98). The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

# Instrument Cluster

---

## GAUGES

### Type 1 and 2

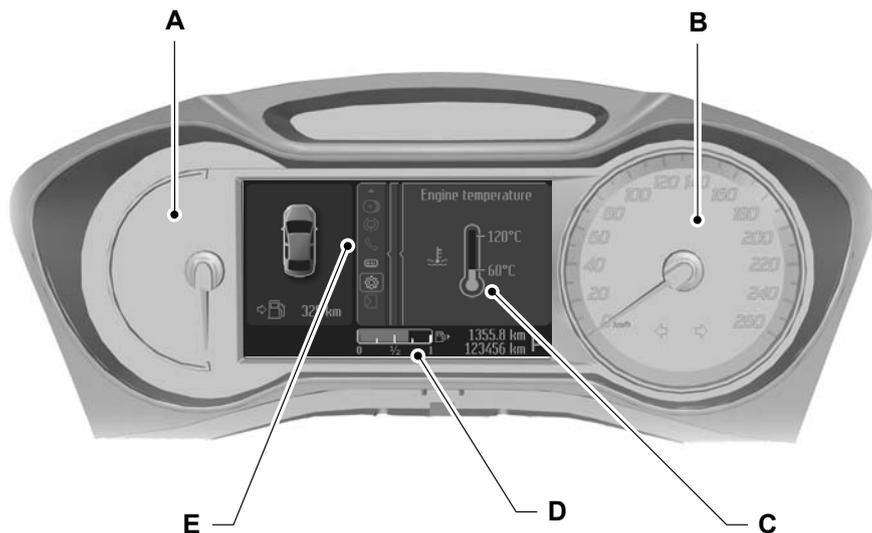


E72984

- A Tachometer
- B Engine coolant temperature gauge
- C Fuel gauge
- D Speedometer

# Instrument Cluster

## Type 3



E130765

- A Tachometer
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Fuel gauge
- E Message centre. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

### Engine coolant temperature gauge

**Note:** On type 3 this gauge is shown within the message centre and will not be displayed unless required. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the indicator will remain in the centre section.

### CAUTION

 Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

If the indicator moves towards 120°C, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause **once the engine has cooled down**. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

# Instrument Cluster

## Fuel gauge

**Note:** On type 3 this gauge is shown within the message centre.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol tells you on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler cap is located.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will illuminate briefly when you switch the ignition on to confirm that the system is operational:

- ABS
- Airbag
- Blind spot monitor
- Brake system
- Coolant temperature
- Engine
- Frost
- Ignition
- Oil pressure
- Stability control (ESP).

If a warning or indicator lamp does not illuminate when the ignition is switched on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by properly trained technician.

## ABS warning lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have normal braking (without ABS). Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Airbag warning lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Blind spot monitor indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is switched off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Monitor** (page 76). See **Information Messages** (page 98).

## Brake system lamp



It illuminates when the parking brake is engaged.

### WARNING



Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Use your brakes with care.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## Coolant temperature warning lamp

### CAUTION



Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

# Instrument Cluster



If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

## Direction indicators



Flashes during operation. A sudden increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 64).

## Engine warning lamp



If it illuminates with the engine running, this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, **reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately**. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

### CAUTION



If the engine warning lamp illuminates in conjunction with a message, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Forward alert indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is switched off. See **Forward alert function** (page 172).

## Front fog lamp indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Frost warning lamp

### WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39.2°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate and glow orange when the outside air temperature is between 4°C (39.2°F) and 0°C (32°F). It will glow red when the temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

## Glow plug indicator



See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 137).

## Headlamp indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp dipped beam or the side and tail lamps on.

## Ignition warning lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## Lane departure warning indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is switched off or in conjunction with a message. The indicator will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Lane Departure Warning** (page 177). See **Information Messages** (page 98).

# Instrument Cluster

## Low fuel level warning lamp



If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

## Main beam indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp main beam on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Message indicator



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 98).

## Oil pressure warning lamp

### CAUTION



Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.



If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

## Rear fog lamp indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Seat belt reminder



See **Seat belt reminder** (page 33).

## Shift indicator



It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher gear may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

## Stability control (ESP) warning lamp



While driving, it flashes during activation of the system. After switching on the ignition, if it does not illuminate or illuminates continuously while driving, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system switches off. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

If you switch ESP off, the warning lamp will illuminate. The lamp will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

## Start-stop indicator



It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message. See **Using start-stop** (page 140). See **Information Messages** (page 98).

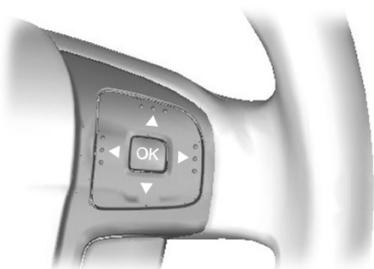
## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Switching the chimes on and off

You can deactivate certain chimes. To set which chimes should sound:

## Instrument Cluster

---



E70499

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Chimes** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight the chime and press the **OK** button to switch the chime on and off.
5. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Press and hold the left arrow button to return to the main menu display.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Do not operate the information display controls when the vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *The information display will remain on for several minutes after you switch off the ignition.*

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the buttons on your steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

For detailed instructions on audio, navigation, phone etc. refer to the appropriate manual.

## Controls



E70499

## Instrument cluster functions

Function	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3
Trip computer	X	X	X
Information messages	X	X	X
Clock setup	X	X	X
Display settings	-	X	X
Park heater setup	-	X	X

Press the **up** and **down** arrow buttons:

- to scroll through the trip computer displays
- to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.

Press the **right** arrow button:

- to enter the main menu from the trip computer displays
- to enter a sub-menu.

Press the **left** arrow button to exit a menu.

Hold the **left** arrow button pressed at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).

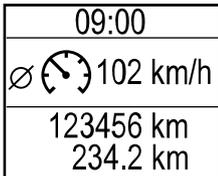
**Note:** *The system will return to the trip computer displays automatically if you do not press any button for a period of time.*

Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm a setting.

# Information Displays

Function	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3
Navigation control	-	-	X
CD control	-	-	X
CD changer control	-	-	X
Radio control	-	-	X
Phone control	-	-	X
Auxiliary input control	-	-	X

## Type 1

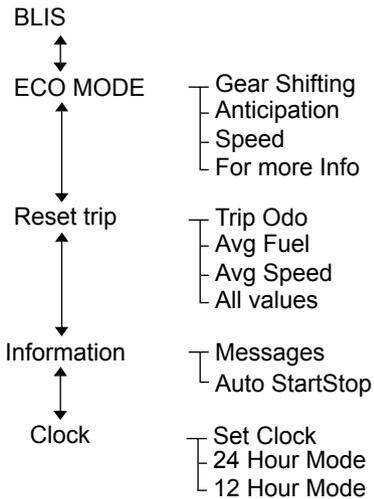


Press the **up** and **down** arrow buttons on the steering wheel to scroll through the trip computer displays. See **Trip Computer** (page 94).

E80604

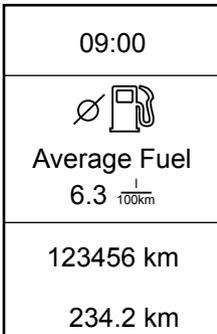
# Information Displays

## Menu structure



E131626

## Type 2

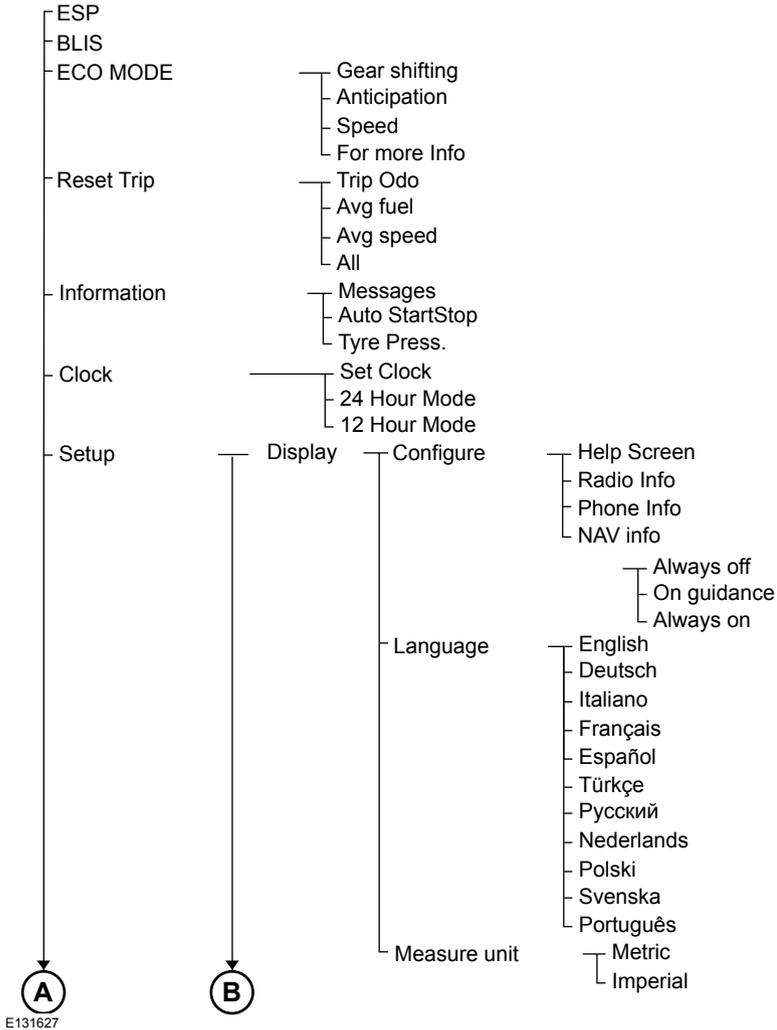


E74426

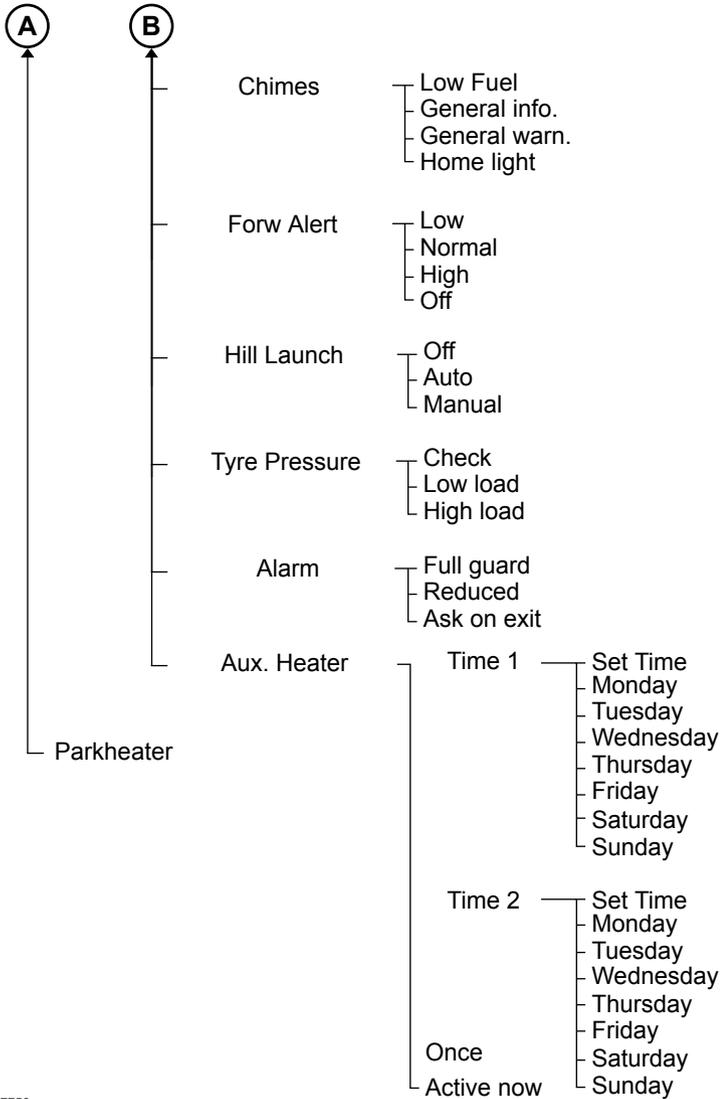
Press the **up** and **down** arrow buttons on the steering wheel to scroll through the trip computer displays. See **Trip Computer** (page 94).

# Information Displays

## Menu structure



# Information Displays



E87753

# Information Displays

## Type 3



E88048

Use the controls to scroll through the menu displays.

### Device list

The highlighted icon shows the current menu in use.



Navigation



CD



CD changer



Radio



Phone



Trip computer



Settings



Auxiliary input

# Information Displays

## Menu structure

Navigation



CD



CD changer



Radio



Phone



Trip computer



- Home
- Destin. mem. — Destinations
- Destin. A-Z — Destinations
- Last destin. — Destinations
- Cancel guidan.

— Folder / Tracks

- CD 1 — Folder / Tracks
- CD 2 — Folder / Tracks
- CD 3 — Folder / Tracks
- CD 4 — Folder / Tracks
- CD 5 — Folder / Tracks
- CD 6 — Folder / Tracks

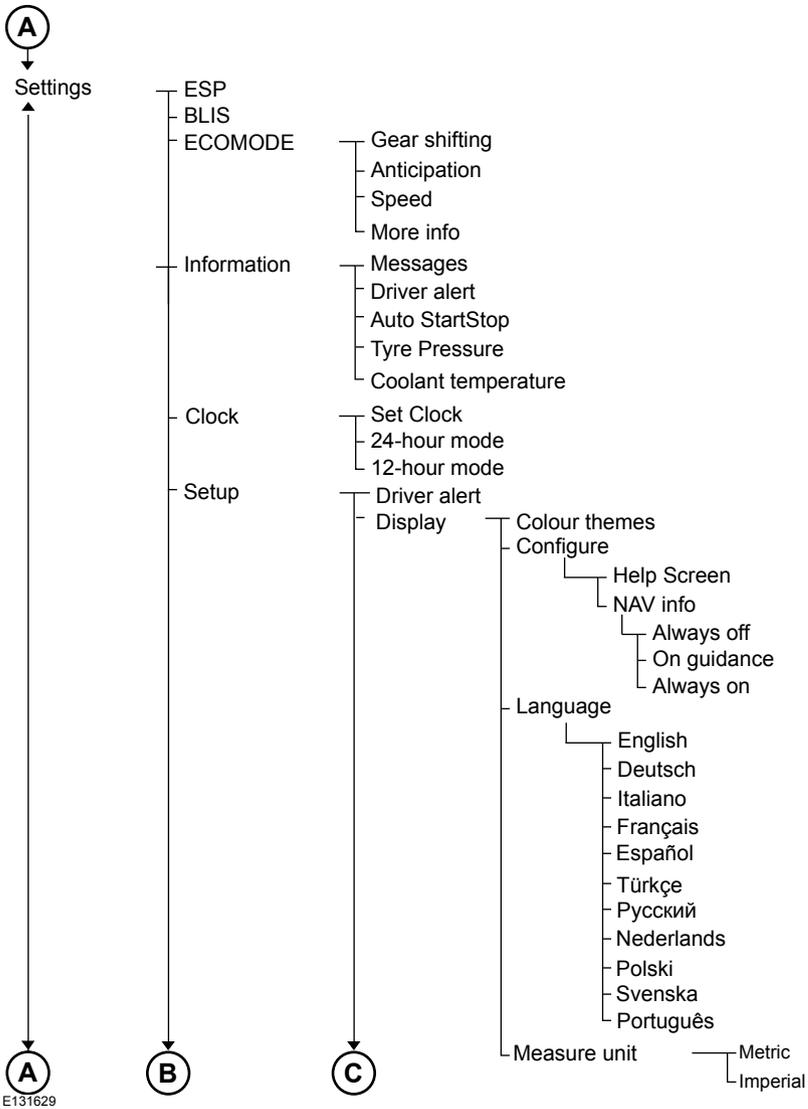
- Station list — Stations
- FM 1 / FM — Stations
- FM 2 — Stations
- FM 3 — Stations
- FM - AST — Stations
- MW / AM — Stations
- LW / AM-AST — Stations

- Phone book — Numbers
- Redial
- Incoming calls — Numbers
- Outgoing calls — Numbers
- Call status

- Distance to empty
- Average fuel
- Average speed
- Reset selected element
- Reset trip odometer

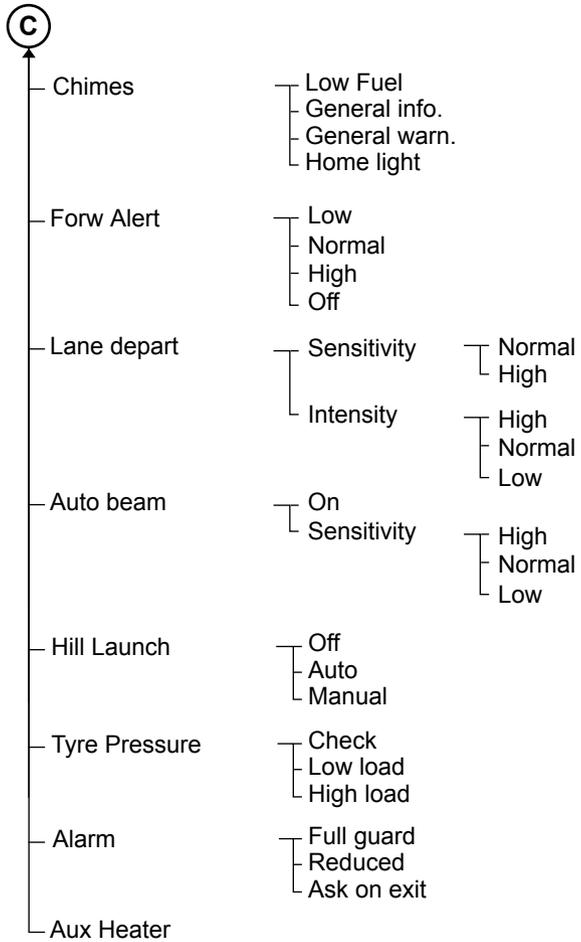
E131628

# Information Displays



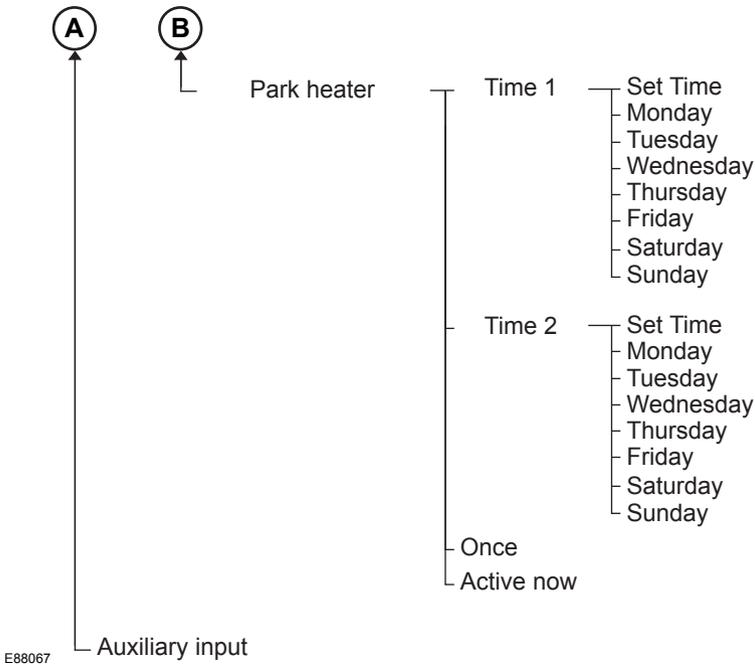
# Information Displays

---



E131630

# Information Displays



## TRIP COMPUTER

### Odometer

Registers the total mileage of the vehicle.

### Tripmeter

Registers the mileage of individual journeys.

### Distance to empty

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

### Average fuel consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

### Average speed

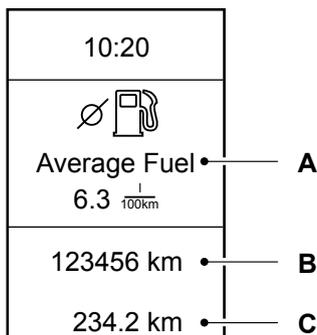
Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.

### Outside air temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

# Information Displays

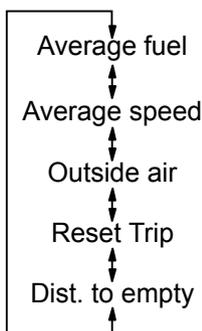
## Type 1 and 2



E74428

- A. Trip computer
- B. Odometer
- C. Tripmeter

The trip computer includes the following information displays:



E74441

Press the **up** and **down** arrow buttons on the steering wheel to scroll through the trip computer displays.

**Note:** The position of the trip computer display may vary depending on the information shown in the display.

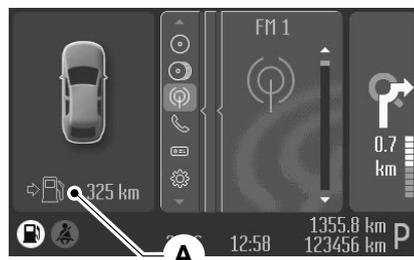
## Resetting the trip computer using the main menu

To reset a particular display:

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Reset Trip** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight the function to be reset.
4. Press the right arrow button to select the function.
5. Hold the **OK** button pressed.

To reset all three displays, select **All values** and hold the **OK** button pressed.

## Type 3



E88049

- A Trip computer

Press the **OK** button on the steering wheel to cycle through the different trip computer displays. To reset a value, press and hold the **OK** button.

## Resetting the trip computer using the main menu

To reset a particular display:

1. Highlight **Trip Computer** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight the function to be reset.

# Information Displays

---

3. Hold the **OK** button pressed.

## PERSONALISED SETTINGS

The following information is displayed in the information display if you have selected it:

### Help screen, radio, navigation and phone information

The help screen appears for a few seconds when you switch the ignition on.

If the radio, navigation or telephone is operating, information relating to this system is displayed in the information display.

To select which information is displayed in the information display:

#### Type 1 and 2

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Configure** and press the right arrow button.
5. To toggle the **Help screen, Radio Info** and **Phone Info** on and off, highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.
6. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Hold the left arrow button pressed to return to the trip computer display.

#### Type 3

1. Highlight **Settings** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.

2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Configure** and press the right arrow button.
5. To toggle the **Help screen** and **NAV Info** on and off, highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.

## Navigation information

You can also choose when the navigation information is displayed in the information display. Three options are available:

- **Always off:** No navigation information is displayed in the information display.
- **On guidance:** The navigation information will only appear when the navigation system provides a guidance instruction. This function is only available on certain navigation systems.
- **Always on:** Navigation information will always appear in the information display when the navigation system is operating.

To set when navigation information should be displayed:

#### Type 1 and 2

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Configure** and press the right arrow button.
5. Highlight **Nav Info** and press the right arrow button.

# Information Displays

---

6. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.
7. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Hold the left arrow button pressed to return to the trip computer display.

## Type 3

1. Highlight **Settings** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Configure** and press the right arrow button.
5. Highlight **Nav Info** and press the right arrow button.
6. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.

## Language

A choice of eleven languages are available:

English, German, Italian, French, Spanish, Turkish, Russian, Dutch, Polish, Swedish and Portuguese.

## Type 1 and 2

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Language** and press the right arrow button.
5. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.

6. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Hold the left arrow button pressed to return to the trip computer display.

## Type 3

1. Highlight **Settings** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Language** and press the right arrow button.
5. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.

## Units of measure

**Note:** *The outside air temperature is only displayed in degrees Celsius and cannot be set to degrees Fahrenheit.*

To select metric or imperial units:

## Type 1 and 2

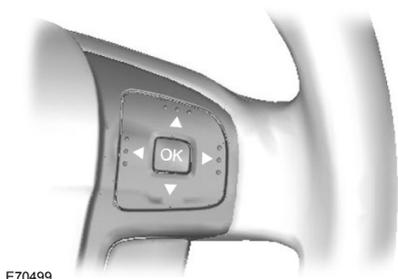
1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Measure Unit** and press the right arrow button.
5. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.
6. Press the left arrow button to return to the menu. Hold the left arrow button pressed to return to the trip computer display.

# Information Displays

## Type 3

1. Highlight **Settings** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Display** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Measure Unit** and press the right arrow button.
5. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES



E70499

Press **OK** to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

With instrument cluster type 3, certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

## Message indicator



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. It will be red or amber depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified.

## Message symbols



See Owner's handbook.



Have the system checked at the next service.



Have the system checked as soon as possible.



Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## Viewing current messages

### Type 1 and 2

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Information** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Messages** and press the right arrow button.
4. Use the up and down buttons to view the current messages.

### Type 3

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Settings** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Information** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Messages** and press the right arrow button.
5. Use the up and down buttons to view the current messages.

# Information Displays

## Active suspension

Message	Indicator	Action
IVDC malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.
IVDC comfort	-	See <b>Active suspension</b> (page 159).
IVDC normal	-	See <b>Active suspension</b> (page 159).
IVDC sport	-	See <b>Active suspension</b> (page 159).

## Airbag

Message	Indicator	Action
Airbag malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Alarm

Message	Indicator	Action
Alarm triggered	amber	See <b>Alarm</b> (page 46).
Alarm system service reqd.	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Automatic main beam control, Lane departure warning and Driver alert

Message	Indicator	Action
Driver fatigue Rest now	red	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Front camera Clean screen	amber	The front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windscreen.
Front camera malfunction	amber	The front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Have this checked as soon as possible.

## Information Displays

Message	Indicator	Action
Front camera not available	amber	The affected systems are temporarily unavailable, and should resume after a few minutes.
Driver fatigue Rest suggested	amber	Take a rest break soon.
Lane departure warn. malfunc.	amber	The system has malfunctioned. Have this checked as soon as possible.

### Battery and charging system

Message	Indicator	Action
Overvoltage: Stop safely!	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Low battery	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

### Blind spot monitor

Message	Indicator	Action
BLIS sensor blocked	amber	See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 76).
BLIS right sensor malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
BLIS left sensor malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
BLIS malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
BLIS inactive Trailer attach'd	amber	See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 76).

# Information Displays

## Child power lock

Message	Indicator	Action
Child lock malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Climate control

Message	Indicator	Action
Aux. Heater on	amber	See <b>Auxiliary Heater</b> (page 114).

## Cruise control and Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Message	Indicator	Action
ACC malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Clean radar sensor	amber	See <b>Adaptive cruise control (ACC)</b> (page 167).
Forward Alert malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Cruise control active	-	See <b>Cruise Control</b> (page 165).
Cruise control standby	-	See <b>Cruise Control</b> (page 165).
ACC unavailable	-	See <b>Adaptive cruise control (ACC)</b> (page 167).

## Doors open

Message	Indicator	Action
Driver door open	red	Vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Driver side rear door open	red	Vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Passenger door open	red	Vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.

## Information Displays

Message	Indicator	Action
Passenger side rear door open	red	Vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Luggage comp. open	red	Vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Bonnet open	red	Vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close. See <b>Opening and Closing the Bonnet</b> (page 208).

### Engine immobiliser

Message	Indicator	Action
Immobiliser active	amber	See <b>Engine immobiliser</b> (page 45).

### Hill start assist

Message	Indicator	Action
Hill Launch not available	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.
Please use park brake !	amber	See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 156).
Hill Launch Assist active	-	See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 156).
Hill Launch Assist off	-	See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 156).

### Keyless system

Message	Indicator	Action
Steering malfunction	red	Have this checked as soon as possible.
Key not detected	amber	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 41).
Car operative Press STOP	amber	The engine is still running. Switch the ignition off. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 133).

## Information Displays

Message	Indicator	Action
Key outside car	amber	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 41).
Key battery low	amber	See <b>Changing the remote control battery</b> (page 35).
Steering locked - Retry	-	See <b>Steering Wheel Lock</b> (page 135).

## Lighting

Message	Indicator	Action
Front lights malfunction	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Low beam: Bulb fault	-	One or both of the headlamp dipped beam bulbs have blown. Check the headlamp dipped beam bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 64).
Rear fog light: Bulb fault	-	One or both of the rear fog lamp bulbs have blown. Check the rear fog lamp bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 64).
Stop lamps: Bulb fault	-	One or both of the brake lamp bulbs have blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 64).
Trailer stopl.: Bulb fault	-	One or both of the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer have blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer.
Trailer turnl.: Bulb fault	-	One or both of the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer have blown. Check the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer.

# Information Displays

## Maintenance

Message	Indicator	Action
Engine malfunction	red	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Check engine oil level	amber	See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 220).
Water detected in fuel	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Low washer fluid level	-	See <b>Washer Fluid Check</b> (page 222).
Service oil	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Occupant protection

Message	Indicator	Action
Crash mode	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Parking brake

Message	Indicator	Action
Park brake applied	red	See <b>Parking Brake</b> (page 154).
Park brake applied	amber	See <b>Parking Brake</b> (page 154).

## Power steering

Message	Indicator	Action
Power steering malfunction	amber	Full steering will be maintained but you will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Stability control (ESP)

Message	Indicator	Action
ESP malfunction	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
ESP off	-	See <b>Using Stability Control</b> (page 155).

## Start-stop

Message	Message indicator	Action
Auto StartStop Switch ign off	red	Switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 140).
Auto StartStop Press clutch	-	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 140).
Auto StartStop Select neutral	-	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 140).
StartStop: Man. start required	-	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.

## Transmission

Message	Indicator	Action
Transmission malfunction	red	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.
Transmission over-temperatur	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Information Displays

### Tyre pressure monitoring system

Message	Indicator	Action
Check ..... tyre!	red	The tyre indicated has continued to deflate. Check the tyre and inflate it to the recommended pressure. See <b>Technical Specifications</b> (page 240).
Check tyre pressures	red	One or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. This message may be displayed after a new sensor has been installed. Check the tyres and inflate them to the recommended pressure. See <b>Technical Specifications</b> (page 240).
Check ..... tyre	amber	The tyre indicated is significantly under-inflated. Check the tyre and inflate it to the recommended pressure. See <b>Technical Specifications</b> (page 240).
Tyre monitor malfunction	amber	You have installed a temporary spare wheel. Install a correctly inflated full size wheel with a sensor as soon as possible. When a malfunction occurs, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure.
		Up to three sensors have malfunctioned, an unapproved accessory is interfering with the system or a general malfunction has been detected. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible. When a malfunction occurs, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure.
Inflate tyres for high speed	amber	The tyre pressures are not suitable for driving at 160 km/h (100 mph). Inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure. See <b>Technical Specifications</b> (page 240). This message will be displayed for only a few seconds with a low tyre pressure warning.
Tyre sensors not detected	-	You have installed wheels and tyres that do not have sensors. The tyre pressures will not be monitored.
		All sensors have malfunctioned or an unapproved accessory is interfering with the system. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

---

## Voice control

<b>Message</b>	<b>Indicator</b>	<b>Action</b>
Voice control Please speak	-	See <b>Voice control</b> (page 279).
Voice control Not recognised	-	See <b>Voice control</b> (page 279).
Voice control Not allowed	-	See <b>Voice control</b> (page 279).

# Climate Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside air

Keep the air intakes forward of the windscreen free from obstruction (snow, leaves etc.) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated air

#### CAUTION

! Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for defrosting and demisting the windscreen.

The air currently in the passenger compartment will be recirculated. Outside air will not enter the vehicle.

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

### Air conditioning

**Note:** The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C (39°F).

**Note:** If you use the air conditioning, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher.

Air is directed through the evaporator where it is cooled. Humidity is extracted from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The resulting condensation is directed to the outside of the vehicle and it is therefore normal if you see a small pool of water under your vehicle.

### General information on controlling the interior climate

Fully close all the windows.

### Warming the interior

Direct the air towards your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air towards the windscreen and the door windows.

### Cooling the interior

Direct the air towards your face.

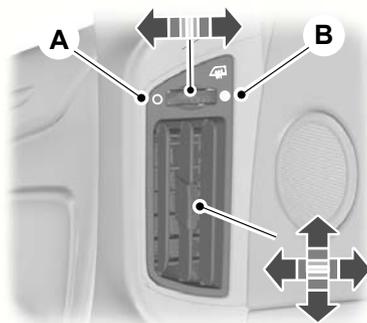
## AIR VENTS

### Front air vents



E71942

### Rear air vents



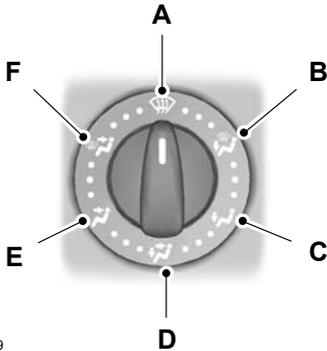
E89129

- A Open
- B Close

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

### Air distribution control

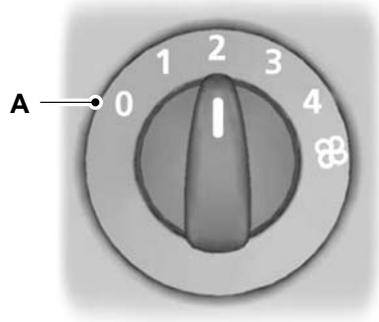


E71379

- A Windscreen
- B Footwell and windscreen
- C Footwell
- D Face level and footwell
- E Face level
- F Face level and windscreen

You can set the air distribution control to any position between the symbols.

### Blower



E75470

A Off

**Note:** If you switch the blower off, the windscreen may mist up.

### Recirculated air



Press the button to toggle between outside air and recirculated air.

### Heating the interior quickly



E71377

# Climate Control

## Ventilation



E71378

Set the air distribution control, blower and air vents to suit your requirements.

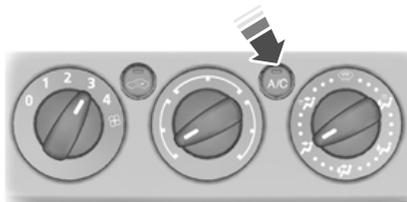
## Air conditioning

### Switching the air conditioning on and off



If you turn the blower off, the air conditioning will turn off. When you turn the blower on again, the air conditioning will come on automatically.

### Cooling with outside air



E71380

## Cooling the interior quickly



E71381

### Defrosting and demisting the windscreen

**Note:** Turn the air conditioning on to assist windscreen and side window demisting.

**Note:** Turn the heater control to maximum heat to assist windscreen and side window defrosting.



E71382

Make sure that the blower and **A/C** is on. The indicator in the switch will illuminate during defrosting and demisting.

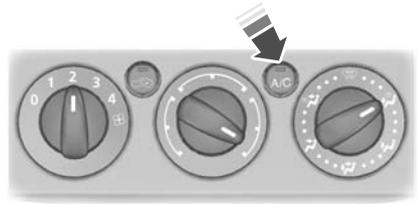
If you move the air distribution control to a position other than **A**, the **A/C** will remain on.

You can switch the air conditioning and recirculated air on and off while the air distribution control is set to position **A**.

If necessary, switch the heated windows on. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 113).

# Climate Control

## Reducing interior air humidity



E71383

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E91390

The system controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the air flow automatically and adjusts them according to the driving and weather conditions. Pressing the **AUTO** button once switches on the auto mode.

The system in your vehicle is dual-zone automatic climate control. When the system is in mono mode, all the temperature zones are linked to the driver's zone. When you switch mono mode off, the dual-zone system allows you to set different temperatures for the driver's and front passenger's side.

**Note:** Avoid adjusting the settings when the vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The automatic climate control adjusts to the current circumstances automatically. For the system to function properly, the side and centre vents should be fully open.

**Note:** The sunload sensor is located on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor with any objects.

**Note:** At low outside temperatures, when the system is in auto mode, the air stream will be directed to the windscreen and the side windows as long as the engine is cold.

**Note:** For information on the automatic climate control, on vehicles fitted with a combined Navigation and automatic climate control system, see separate handbook.

# Climate Control

## Setting the temperature



E91391

You can set the temperature between 15.5°C (60°F) and 29.5°C (85°F) in steps of 0.5°C (1°F). In position **LO**, 15°C (59°F), the system will switch to permanent cooling. In position **HI**, 30°C (86°F), the system will switch to permanent heating.

**Note:** If either position **LO** or **HI** is selected, the system will not regulate a stable temperature.

## Mono mode

In mono mode, the temperature settings for both the driver's and passenger's side are linked. If you adjust the temperature using the rotary control on the driver's side, the settings will be adjusted to the same setting on the passenger's side. In mono mode, **MONO** appears in the display.

## To switch mono mode off

Select a temperature for the passenger's side with the rotary control on the passenger's side. Mono mode will switch off and **MONO** disappears from the display. The temperature for the driver's side will remain unchanged. You can now adjust the driver and passenger side temperatures independently of each another. The temperature settings for each side will be shown in the display. You can set a temperature difference of up to 4°C (8°F).

**Note:** If you set a temperature difference of greater than 4°C (8°F), the temperature on the other side will be adjusted so that the difference remains 4°C (8°F).

**Note:** If you set one of the sides to **HI** or **LO**, both sides will be set to **HI** or **LO**.

## To switch mono mode back on

**MONO**

To switch mono mode back on, press the **MONO** button. **MONO** reappears in the display and the passenger's side temperature will be adjusted to the driver's side temperature.

## Blower



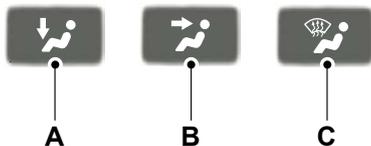
Use the buttons to adjust the blower speed.

The blower setting is indicated in the display.

To return to auto mode, press the **AUTO** button.

## Air distribution

To adjust air distribution, press the desired button. Any combination of settings can be selected simultaneously.



E70308

- A Footwell
- B Face level
- C Windscreen

When you select windscreen defrosting and demisting, **A**, **B** and **C** switch off automatically and the air conditioning switches on. Outside air will flow into the vehicle. You cannot select recirculated air.

# Climate Control

## Windscreen defrosting and demisting



Press the windscreen defrosting and demisting button. Outside air will flow into the vehicle. Air conditioning is automatically selected. As long as the air distribution is set to this position, you cannot select recirculated air.

The blower speed and the temperature control operate automatically and cannot be adjusted manually. The blower is set to high speed and the temperature to **HI**.

When you select windscreen defrosting and demisting, the heated screens switch on automatically and switch off after a short time.

To return to auto mode, press the **AUTO** button.

## Switching the air conditioning on and off



Press the **A/C** button to switch the air conditioning on and off. **A/C OFF** appears in the display when the air conditioning is switched off.

**A/C ON** appears in the display when the air conditioning is switched on.

## Recirculated air



Press the recirculated air button to toggle between outside air and recirculated air.

**Note:** *When the system is in auto mode and the interior and exterior temperatures are quite hot, the system selects recirculated air automatically to maximise cooling of the interior. Once the selected temperature is reached, the system will reselect outside air automatically.*

## Switching off the automatic climate control



Press the **OFF** button.

When switched off, the heating, ventilation and air conditioning system is switched off and recirculated air is selected.

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

### Heated windows

Use the heated windows to defrost or demist the windscreen or rear window.

**Note:** *The heated windows operate only when the engine is running.*

### Heated windscreen



### Heated rear window



### Heated exterior mirrors

Electric exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.

# Climate Control

## AUXILIARY HEATER

### Parking heater

#### WARNING



The parking heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapours or dust or in enclosed spaces.

The parking heater operates independently of the vehicle heater by heating the engine's coolant circuit. It is fed from the vehicle fuel tank. You can also use it while the vehicle is in motion to help the vehicle heater warm up the interior more quickly.

Used properly, the parking heater provides the following benefits:

- It preheats the interior of the vehicle.
- It keeps the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevents condensation.
- It avoids cold starts and allows the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

**Note:** The parking heater will only operate if there is at least 7.5 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel in the fuel tank and the ambient temperature is below 15°C (59°F). The heater will not operate if the battery is low.

**Note:** The heating depends on the outside air temperature.

**Note:** When the parking heater is activated, exhaust fumes may come from under the sides of the vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** On vehicles with a manual heating, ventilation and air conditioning system, the heating of the vehicle interior is dependent on the temperature, air distribution and blower control settings.

To prevent the battery from discharging:

- Once the parking heater has performed one heating cycle, the next programmed heating cycle will only be carried out if you have started the vehicle's engine in between.
- After a heating cycle, drive the vehicle for at least the period of the heating cycle.

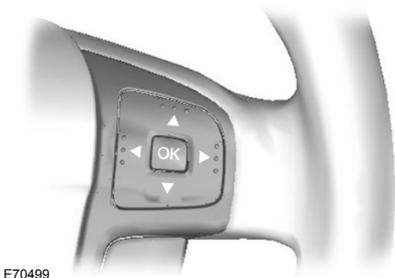
### Programming the parking heater

**Note:** The programmed time is the time at which you wish the vehicle to be warm and ready to drive, not the time at which the heater switches on.

**Note:** You must programme the times at least 70 minutes in advance of the time you wish to set.

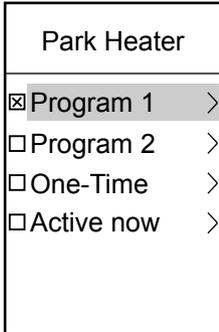
**Note:** You must set the time and date correctly. See **Clock** (page 127).

To programme the heating times:



1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Park Heater** and press the right arrow button.

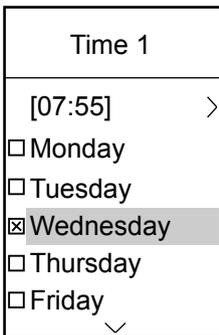
# Climate Control



E74467

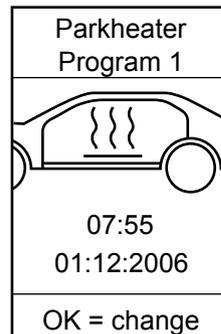
- The functions **Program 1** and **Program 2** allow you to programme up to two heating cycles for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the heater will warm up the vehicle at these times on these days every week.
- The function **One-Time** allows you to programme one heating cycle for one specific day.
- The function **Active now** automatically switches on the heater.

## Programming the functions Program 1 and Program 2



E74468

1. Highlight **Program 1** and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight the day on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
3. Press the **OK** button to confirm the selection. A cross appears in the box next to the day to show that this day is selected.
4. Continue in the same way to select all the days on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
5. To set the time at which the vehicle should be warmed up, highlight the time at the top of the display and press the right arrow button.
6. Press the **OK** button and the hours flash. Use the up and down arrow buttons to adjust the individual settings and the left and right arrow buttons to move to the next or previous setting.
7. When you have finished, press the **OK** button again to confirm the selection.



E74469

You can use the function **Program 2** to set a second cycle, for example different times on different days or twice on the same day. The programming procedure is the same as for the function **Program 1**.

# Climate Control

## Programming the function One-Time

1. Highlight **One-Time** and press the right arrow button.
2. Press the **OK** button and the hours flash. Use the up and down arrow buttons to adjust the individual settings and the left and right arrow buttons to move to the next or previous setting.
3. When you have finished, press the **OK** button again to confirm the selection.

## Active now

Highlight **Active now** and press the **OK** button. A cross appears in the box next to the function to show that the heater is activated.

To deactivate the heater, highlight **Active now** and press the **OK** button again.

## Remote starting

The parking heater may be started and switched off from a distance of up to 500 metres (1640 feet) using the supplied remote control transmitter. This range will vary depending upon local conditions and terrain, as well as battery condition. The remote control transmitter will indicate whether or not the signal has been received. The parking heater will operate for a maximum of 30 minutes.

**Note:** *The heater will operate, depending on the ambient temperature, for between 10 and 30 minutes. The interior will cool down after the heating period has elapsed, therefore a remote start more than 30 minutes before driving is not recommended.*

**Note:** *The remote control may not always receive confirmation of a successful remote command at extended operating ranges.*

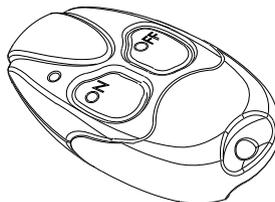
## Starting

Hold the transmitter with the antenna upwards and press the ON button for at least two seconds. The LED on the transmitter lights up green to confirm the signal has been received.

## Switching off

Hold the transmitter with the antenna upwards and press the OFF button for at least two seconds. The LED on the transmitter lights up red to confirm the signal has been received.

## Remote start in combination with direct start or timer



E114360

Remote start is integrated with normal heater control. Parking heaters started with direct start or timer functions can be switched off with the remote control transmitter and vice versa.

## Feedback during starting and switching off

The LED on the transmitter illuminates green for about two seconds. This indicates the signal has been received by the vehicle and the heater has started.

The LED on the transmitter illuminates red for about two seconds. This indicates the signal has been received by the vehicle and the heater has switched off.

# Climate Control

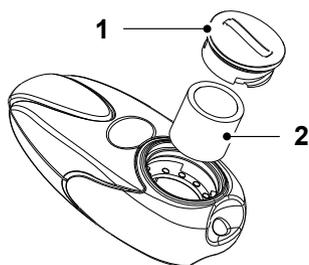
The LED on the transmitter flashes green or red for about two seconds. This indicates the signal was not transmitted correctly. Repeat the transmission.

The LED on the transmitter illuminates orange for about two seconds before showing green or red. This indicates the transmitter batteries are weak and should be changed.

The LED on the transmitter flashes orange for about 5 seconds. This indicates that the signal was not transmitted. The transmitter batteries are discharged and should be changed as soon as possible.

## Changing the remote control battery

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.



E114361

1. Insert a screwdriver or other suitable tool into the slot on the back of the remote control, and unscrew the compartment cover.

### CAUTION

-  Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

2. Carefully prise out the battery.

3. Install a new battery (3.3V type CR1-3N) with the **+** facing upwards.
4. Re-assemble the remote control.

## Programming the transmitter

Further transmitters may be used with the remote system, please consult your dealer. Up to a maximum of 3 separate remote controls may be added. When adding extra transmitters these must be programmed separately.

**Note:** *The heater must be switched off during programming.*

**Note:** *The programming procedure may be repeated as often as is required. The oldest programmed transmitter will be deleted each time.*

1. Install the battery in the new transmitter.
2. Turn off the power to the receiver by removing fuse F32 from the engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 196).
3. Wait for at least 5 seconds.
4. Reconnect power to the receiver by replacing the fuse, and press the OFF button on the new transmitter within 5 seconds until the LED light turns off.
5. The new transmitter is now programmed.

## Fuel operated heater (depending on country)

### WARNING

-  The fuel operated heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapours or dust or in enclosed spaces.

# Climate Control

The fuel operated heater aids in warming the engine and the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature, unless you have deactivated it. When the fuel operated heater is operating, **Aux. Heater on** is displayed in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

To deactivate the fuel operated heater:



E70499

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Aux. Heater** and press the **OK** button to toggle the heater on and off. A cross appears in the box when the heater is activated.
4. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Hold the left arrow button pressed to return to the trip computer display.

## Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country)

The diesel auxiliary heater (PTC electrical heater) aids in warming the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature, the coolant temperature and the alternator load.

## ELECTRIC SUNROOF

### WARNING



Before operating the electric sunroof you should verify it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the sunroof opening. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury. It is the primary responsibility of the supervising adults to never leave a child unattended in a vehicle and to never leave the keys in an unattended vehicle.

**Note:** *When the switches are operated often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

**Note:** *The electric sunroof can also be operated with the ignition off via the global opening and global closing function. See **Global Opening and Closing** (page 40).*

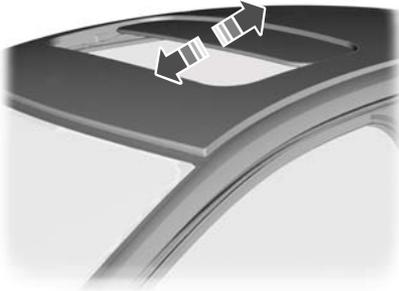
There are two ways of opening the sunroof – the rear of the sunroof lifts open or the sunroof opens from the front, sliding back under the roof. The sunroof opens and closes whilst the switch is pressed.

Switch on the ignition to operate the electric sunroof.

The power sunroof is operated by a switch located between the sun visors.

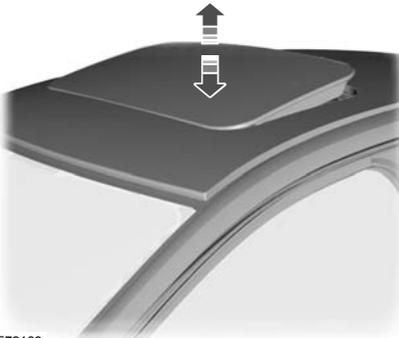
# Climate Control

## Opening and closing the sunroof



E72188

## Tilting the sunroof



E72189

## Opening and closing the sunroof automatically

**Note:** When opening automatically, the sunroof will stop about 8 cm from the fully opened position. This position reduces the buffeting noise which is sometimes heard when the sunroof is fully open. The sunroof will only stop automatically in this position when the sunroof is opened automatically.

To open or close the sunroof automatically press either side of the switch to the second action point and release it completely. Press again to stop.

When the closed position is reached, the sunroof stops automatically.

## Sunroof anti-trap protection

### WARNINGS



The anti-trap function is deactivated until the memory has been reset. Careless closing of the window can cause injuries.



Careless closing of the electric sunroof can override the anti-trap protection and cause injuries.

The sunroof will stop automatically while closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

To override anti-trap protection when there is a resistance, e. g. in the winter, proceed as follows:

### WARNING



While the sunroof is being closed for the third time, the anti-trap function is disabled. Make sure there are no obstacles in the way of the closing sunroof.

Close the sunroof a third time to the resistance. The anti-trap function is disabled and the sunroof cannot be closed automatically. The sunroof will override the resistance and can then be closed fully.

If the sunroof does not close after the third attempt, have it checked by an expert.

## Sunroof safety mode

### WARNING



The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the closing sunroof.

---

If the system detects a malfunction, it enters a safety mode. The sunroof will move for only about 0.5 seconds at a time and then stop again. Close the sunroof by pressing the button again when the sunroof stops moving. When the rear of the sunroof is lifted, lift the rear all the way and then close the sunroof. Have the system checked by an expert immediately.

## Sunroof relearning

### WARNING



The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the closing sunroof.

---

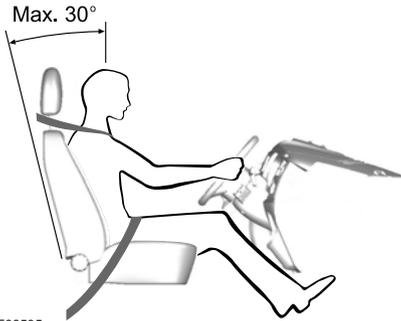
In case the sunroof no longer closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

- Tilt the rear of the sunroof as far as possible. Release the button.
- Press and hold the same button again for 30 seconds until you see the sunroof move.
- Release the button and immediately press and hold it again. The sunroof will close, open fully and then close again. Do not release the button before the sunroof has reached the closed position for the second time.

If the button is not pressed continuously, the relearning function will be interrupted. Start the procedure once more from the beginning.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



E68595

### WARNINGS



Do not adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving.



Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect.

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision. We recommend that you:

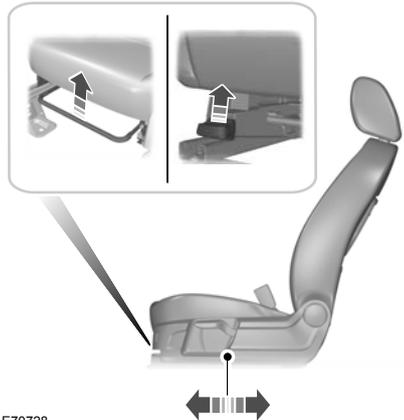
- sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forwards as possible, remaining comfortable.
- keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 250 millimetres (10 inches) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

- bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- position the shoulder strap of the seat belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## MANUAL SEATS

### Moving the seats backwards and forwards



### WARNING



Rock the seat backwards and forwards after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.

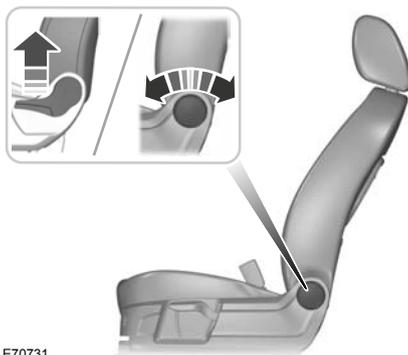
# Seats

## Adjusting the lumbar support



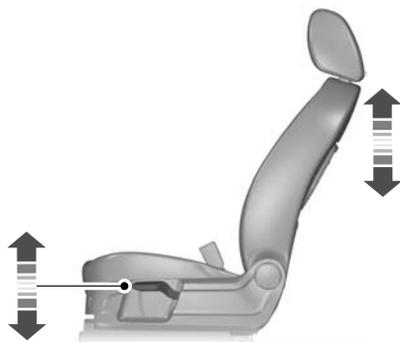
E70729

## Adjusting the angle of the seatback



E70731

## Adjusting the height of the driver's seat



E70730

## POWER SEATS

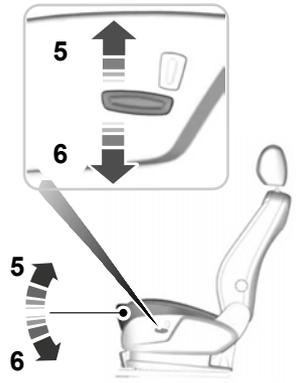
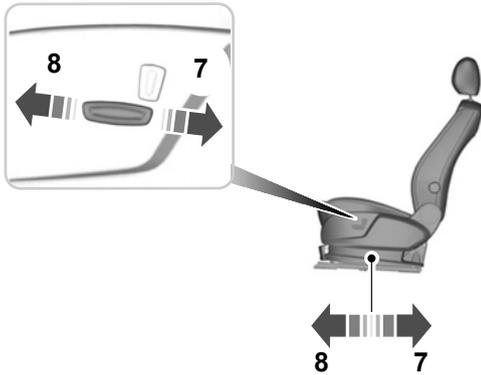
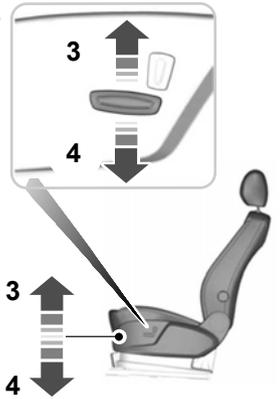
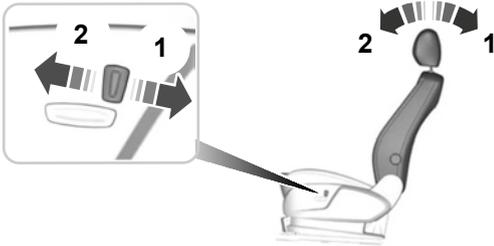
### 2-way electric seat



E70733

# Seats

## 8-way electric seat



E70734

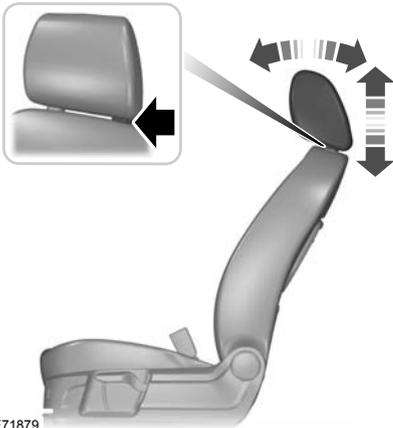
# Seats

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### Adjusting the head restraint

#### WARNINGS

-  Raise the rear head restraint when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger.
-  When using a forward facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat.



E71879

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forwards as possible, remaining comfortable.

### Removing the head restraint

Press the locking buttons and remove the head restraint.

## REAR SEATS

#### WARNINGS

-  When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.
-  Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

### Folding the seatbacks down

#### CAUTION

-  Lower the head restraints.



E86611

1. Press the unlock buttons down and hold them there.
2. Push the seatback forwards.

### Creating a level load floor

#### WARNING

-  Make sure the red indicator is not showing when you engage the seat in the catches.

# Seats

## CAUTION

 Lower the head restraints.



E86612

1. Insert your fingers between the seat cushion and seatback and fold the seat cushion forwards.
2. Press the unlock buttons down and hold them there.
3. Push the seatback forwards.

## Folding the seatbacks up

### WARNING

 When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

## HEATED SEATS

**Note:** Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.



E70601



E71224

**Note:** The number of illuminated lights beside the button indicates the selected step.

**Note:** The heater setting is indicated in red.

**Note:** When no light is illuminated, the heating is switched off.

**Note:** Only the front seat settings are stored when you switch off the ignition.

## Raising and Lowering the Temperature

Press and hold the relevant button or press it repeatedly to select the desired temperature.

# Seats

## VENTILATED SEATS

**Note:** Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.



E70601



E70602

**Note:** The number of illuminated lights beside the button indicates the selected step.

**Note:** The ventilation setting is indicated in blue.

**Note:** When no light is illuminated, the ventilation is switched off.

**Note:** The settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.

**Note:** When the seat is being ventilated, the heater may switch on automatically. This is to prevent the flow of air becoming uncomfortably cool.

**Note:** The air in the vehicle interior is used to ventilate the seats. The cooling effect therefore depends on the temperature of the vehicle interior. Switch on the air conditioning if necessary and set the air distribution to footwell. See **Climate Control** (page 108).

## Raising and Lowering the Temperature

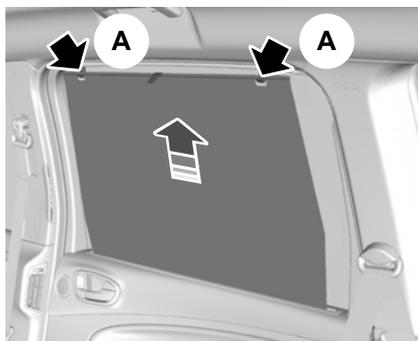
Press and hold the relevant button or press it repeatedly to select the desired temperature.

## Convenience features

### SUN SHADES

Pull the blind up and attach it to the hooks (A).

#### Side windows



E74809

#### Rear window



E86514

### INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E70723

### CLOCK

**Note:** Some navigation systems will automatically set the date and time on the clock using GPS signals.

**Note:** See **General Information** (page 85).

1. From the main menu, select the clock function.
2. Select the option required.
3. Press **OK**.
4. Using the right, left, up and down arrow buttons, select and change the value.
5. Press **OK**.

### CIGAR LIGHTER

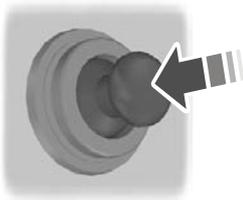
#### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- ⚠ Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

## Convenience features

**Note:** Switch the ignition on to use the cigar lighter. You can also use it for up to 30 minutes after you have switched the ignition off.

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 15 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.

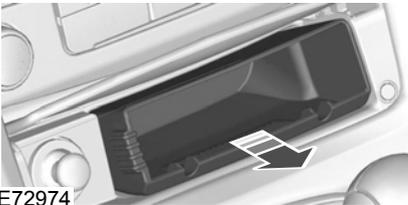


E72972

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

### ASHTRAY

#### Front ashtray



E72974

To empty, pull out the complete ashtray.

#### Rear ashtray



E73705

To remove the ashtray, open it, press it down against the spring and remove it.

### AUXILIARY POWER POINTS

#### WARNING

 If used when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

**Note:** You can use them with the ignition switched off.

**Note:** You can use them to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 15 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.



E78056

Locations:

- Centre console.
- Luggage compartment.

# Convenience features

---

## CUP HOLDERS

### WARNING



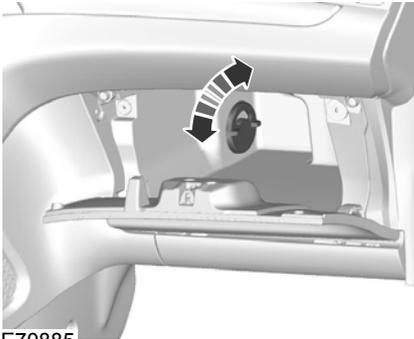
Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving.

---

## GLOVE BOX

### Cooled glove box

**Note:** You can cool the glove box using air from the air conditioning system.



E70885



E73704



E72905

## STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

### WARNING



Do not drive with any storage compartment lid open. Make sure that you secure the lid before setting off.

---

### CAUTION

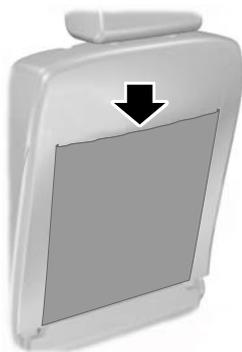


Do not keep heat-sensitive items and liquids in any storage compartment.

---

# Convenience features

## MAP POCKETS



E74686

## MEMORY FUNCTION

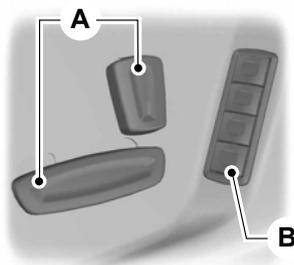
### WARNINGS



Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



The memory store function cannot be used when the vehicle is moving.



E86768

- A Seat adjustment controls. See **Power Seats** (page 122).
- B Memory pre-set buttons

Up to four different driver's seat and exterior mirror positions can be stored in the memory. Your preferred setting for the reverse mirror dipping feature can also be stored. See **Electric exterior mirrors** (page 74).

### Setting a memory pre-set

#### Passive setting

The vehicle stores the seating and mirror positions for up to four remote controls or passive keys. Next time the vehicle is unlocked, the position of the seat and mirrors will adjust to the last used position.

Each time you turn the ignition off, the current seat and mirror settings are stored on the remote control or passive key used.

#### Active setting

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat and exterior mirrors to the desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired pre-set button **B** until a single chime sounds to confirm.

# Convenience features

## Recalling a stored seat position

**Note:** To stop seat movement during a recall, press any driver seat adjustment control, any of the memory buttons or any mirror control switch. Seat movement will also stop if you move the vehicle.

### Passive recall

**Note:** If more than one passive key is in range, the memory function will move to the settings of the first key stored.

When you unlock the vehicle with the remote control or pull the driver door handle with a passive key in range, the seat and mirrors will move to the position stored on that remote control or passive key.

### Active recall

Press the pre-set button associated with the desired driving position. The seat and mirrors will move to the position stored on that pre-set.

## Resetting the memory

If any seat position travel is interrupted (e.g. an obstacle in the way or loss of power supply), you will need to reset the memory.

**Note:** Make sure all electrical accessories are switched off.

1. Turn the ignition to position **II**.
2. Operate the seat adjustment control to move the seat in the required direction until it stops. See **Power Seats** (page 122). A click will be heard.
3. Release the seat adjustment control and immediately press and hold the switch in the same direction for at least 3 seconds. Keep it held until the seat stops at the mechanical end of its travel and a click is heard.
4. Release the seat adjustment control.

5. Operate the same seat adjustment control in the opposite direction for at least 3 seconds. Keep it held until the seat stops at the mechanical end of its travel and a click is heard.

## GLASSES HOLDER



E131605

## CD CHANGER

This is located in the luggage compartment.

## AUXILIARY INPUT SOCKET

You can find the socket in the glove box or the centre console. See **Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket** (page 270).

## USB PORT

You can find the socket in the glove box or the centre console. See **Connectivity** (page 297).

## Convenience features

---

### FLOOR MATS

#### WARNING



When using the floor mats, always make sure the floor mat is properly secured using the appropriate fixings and positioned so that it does not interfere with the operation of the pedals.

---

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### General points on starting

If the battery has been disconnected the vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approx. 8 kilometres (5 miles) after reconnecting the battery.

This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. Any unusual driving characteristics during this period may be disregarded.

### Starting the engine by towing or pushing

#### WARNING



To prevent damage you must not push or tow start your vehicle. Use booster cables and a booster battery.

See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 227).

## IGNITION SWITCH

#### WARNING



Never return the key to position **0** or **I** when the vehicle is in motion.



E72128

**0** The ignition is off.

**I** The ignition and all main electrical circuits are disabled.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid discharging the battery.

**II** The ignition is switched on. All electrical circuits are operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate. This is the key position when driving. You must also select it when being towed.

**III** The starter motor is activated. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

## KEYLESS STARTING

#### WARNINGS



The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.



Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle.

See **Steering Wheel Lock** (page 135).

**Note:** The ignition may automatically switch off after a period of time if your vehicle has been left unattended with the ignition on. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located inside the vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

**Note:** To start your engine you must also fully depress the brake or clutch pedal, depending on the transmission fitted.



E85766

### Ignition on

Press the button once. All electrical circuits are operational, warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Starting with manual transmission

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the button.
3. If the engine does not start, fully depress the brake and clutch pedals.

## Starting with automatic transmission

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the button.

## Starting a diesel engine

**Note:** Engine cranking may not commence until the engine glow plug cycle has been completed. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

**Note:** Continue to press the clutch or brake pedal until engine cranking begins.

## Failure to start

The passive starting system will not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

If you are unable to start your vehicle carry out the following procedure.

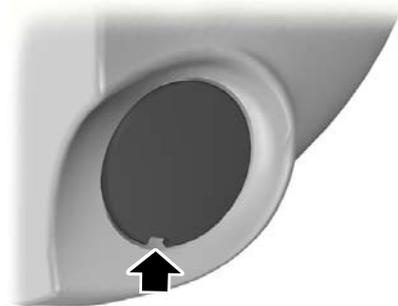
## Type 1



E87382

1. Hold the key next to the steering column shroud exactly as shown.
2. With the key in this position you can use the button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

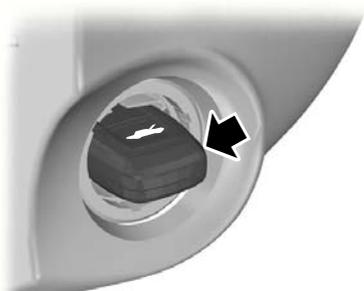
## Type 2



E87381

1. Carefully prise out the cover.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine



E85767

2. Insert the key into the key holder.



E85766

3. With the key in this position you can press the button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary

**Note:** *The ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.*

### Manual transmission

Briefly press the button.

### Automatic transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Briefly press the button.

## Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving

### WARNING

 Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be OFF.

Press and hold the button for two seconds, or press three times within three seconds.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

### WARNING

 Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

## Vehicles without keyless starting

To activate the steering wheel lock;

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Turn the steering wheel.

## Vehicles with keyless starting

**Note:** *The steering wheel lock will not activate when the ignition is on or the vehicle is moving.*

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock. This operates automatically.

The steering wheel lock will activate after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside of the vehicle.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Deactivating the steering wheel lock

Switch the ignition on, or:

Vehicles with automatic transmission

- Press the brake pedal.

Vehicles with manual transmission

- Press the clutch pedal.

## STARTING A PETROL ENGINE

**Note:** *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes. A message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 98).*

### Cold or hot engine

#### Vehicles with manual transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the brake pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

## All vehicles

If the engine does not start, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-13^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

## Flooded engine

### Vehicles with manual transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

### Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Fully depress the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine.

## All vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

## Engine idle speed after starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting will vary depending on the engine temperature.

The idle speed is automatically increased when the engine is cold this is to heat the catalytic converter. This keeps the vehicle emissions to an absolute minimum.

The idle speed will slowly decrease to the normal level as the catalytic converter warms up.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING A PETROL ENGINE - E85

For general information on starting a petrol engine. See **Starting a Petrol Engine** (page 136).

### Starting at low ambient temperatures

When the temperature is lower than  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $14^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and the vehicle is filled with E85, an engine block heater should be used to facilitate starting. See **Engine Block Heater** (page 138). Failure to do this will result in a non start.

If the temperature is expected to remain below  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $14^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), it is recommended that you increase the proportion of petrol in the tank by topping up with 95 octane unleaded petrol if the tank is not already full. About 10 litres (2.2 gallons) of petrol will reduce the proportion of E85 in a  $\frac{3}{4}$  full tank from 85% to 70% and will considerably improve cold start capability.

If, at very low temperatures, the tank is filled with only E85 and there is no way to use an engine block heater, you may experience difficulties starting the engine.

If the engine fails to start, proceed as follows:

1. Fully depress the accelerator pedal.
2. Turn the ignition key to position III.

### CAUTION



Release the ignition key as soon as the engine has started.

3. Gradually release the accelerator pedal after five seconds of engine cranking or as the engine speed rises.

If the engine fails to start, repeat steps 1, 2 and 3, or connect an engine block heater for two hours before attempting another start.

During starting, the fuel injectors are turned off as long as the accelerator pedal is depressed. This can be used to drain excessive fuel from the intake manifold after several unsuccessful starting attempts.

If the battery has been disconnected or after the fuel type has been changed, the idle speed may be irregular. This will improve after 10 to 30 seconds.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

### Cold or hot engine

#### All vehicles

**Note:** When the temperature is below  $-15^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), you may need to crank the engine for up to 25 seconds.

**Note:** Continue cranking the engine until it starts.

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a maximum of 30 seconds at a time.



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

#### Vehicles with manual transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Select park or neutral.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The DPF forms part of the emissions reduction systems fitted to your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

### Regeneration

#### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

---

#### CAUTION



Avoid running out of fuel.

---

**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odour and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

**Note:** *After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.*

Unlike a normal filter which requires periodic replacement, the DPF has been designed to regenerate, or clean itself to maintain operating efficiency. The regeneration process takes place automatically. However, some driving conditions mean that you may need to support the regeneration process.

If you drive only short distances or your journeys contain frequent stopping and starting, where there is increased acceleration and deceleration, occasional trips with the following conditions will assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle at a constant speed, preferably on a main road or motorway, for up to 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch off the ignition.
- Use a lower gear than normal to maintain a higher engine speed during this journey, where appropriate.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles with a turbocharger

#### CAUTION



Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

---

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

#### CAUTION



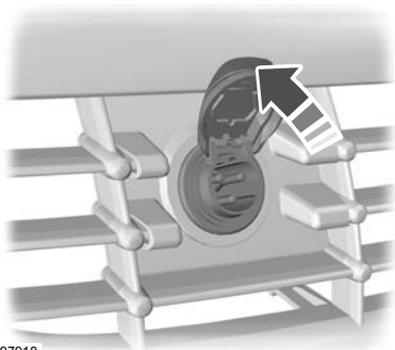
Make sure you disconnect the power cable from the engine heater connector before driving away.

---

**Note:** *The engine heater connector is located in the radiator grille at the front of your vehicle.*

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

---



E97918

Connect the engine heater for 2 to 3 hours before starting the engine.

# Start-Stop

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### CAUTION

 For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when the vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when the driver presses the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.

To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the gear lever to the neutral position and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

## USING START-STOP

### WARNINGS

 The engine may restart automatically if required by the system. See **Principle of Operation** (page 140).

 Switch the ignition off before opening the bonnet or carrying out any maintenance.

 Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

**Note:** *The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is between 0°C (32°F) and 30°C (86°F).*

**Note:** *If you stall the engine, and then depress the clutch pedal within a couple of seconds, the system will automatically restart the engine.*

**Note:** *The Start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).*

**Note:** *The Start-stop indicator will flash amber, requiring you to select neutral or depress the clutch pedal. In conjunction a message will be shown in the display.*

**Note:** *If the system detects a malfunction, it is deactivated. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.*

**Note:** *If you have switched the system off, the switch will be illuminated.*

**Note:** *The system is on by default. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be de-activated for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location. See **At a Glance** (page 11).*



## To stop the engine

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver's door has been opened.

## Start-Stop

---

- Low engine operating temperature.
- Low brake system vacuum.
- If a road speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) has not been exceeded.
- The driver's seat belt has not been fastened.

### **To re-start the engine**

**Note:** *The gear lever must be in the neutral position.*

Depress the clutch pedal.

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low battery voltage.
- To maintain the interior climate.

# Eco Mode

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

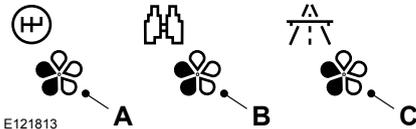
The system assists the driver to drive more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds on motorways and open roads.

**Note:** *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving disciplines but also influenced by many other factors such as short journeys and cold starts.*

**Note:** *Frequent short journeys, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption.*

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your overall fuel consumption.

### Type 1



- A Gear shifting
- B Anticipation
- C Efficient speed

### Gear shifting

Using the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions will improve fuel consumption.

### Anticipation

Adjusting your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration will improve fuel consumption.

### Efficient speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reducing your cruising speed on open roads will improve fuel consumption.

### Type 2 and 3

The relevant information will be shown in the display.

## USING ECO MODE

The system is accessed using the relevant information display menu. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

### Resetting Eco mode

Reset the average fuel consumption.

**Note:** *New values may take a short time to calculate.*

# Fuel and Refuelling

---

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS

 Stop refuelling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

 Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

---

## FUEL QUALITY - PETROL

### CAUTION

 Do not use leaded petrol or petrol with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

---

**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.*

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded petrol that meets the specification defined by EN 228, or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

## FUEL QUALITY - E85

### WARNINGS

 Do not modify the fuel system configuration or the components in the system.

 Do not replace the fuel system or the components with parts not specially designed to be used with E85.

---

### CAUTIONS

 Do not use leaded petrol or petrol with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

 Do not use methanol instead of E85.

---

**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.*

**Note:** *When using E85, you may experience a higher fuel consumption.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle will operate well on commercial quality 95 octane unleaded petrol, but only high quality E85 offers the same protection and performance.*

Use **minimum 95 octane unleaded** petrol that meets the specification defined by **EN 228**, or equivalent. You can also use a mixture of unleaded petrol and E85.

## Long-term storage

Due to small amounts of corrosive impurities that may be found in the E85, it is recommended that you fill the tank with only 95 octane unleaded petrol prior to long-term storage of your vehicle.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

### WARNING

 Do not mix diesel with oil, petrol or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

---

### CAUTIONS

 Do not add kerosene, paraffin or petrol to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

# Fuel and Refuelling

## CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Use diesel that meets the specification defined by **EN 590**, or the relevant national specification.

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** The use of additives or other engine treatments not approved by Ford is not recommended.

**Note:** We do not recommend the prolonged use of additives intended to prevent fuel waxing.

## Long-term storage

Most diesel fuels contain bio-diesel, it is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available) or add an anti-oxidant prior to long-term storage of your vehicle exceeding two months. Your dealer can help you with a suitable anti-oxidant.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

### WARNING

- ⚠ Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

## Driving with a catalytic converter

### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Avoid running out of fuel.
- ⚠ Do not crank the engine for long periods.
- ⚠ Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

## CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 227).
- ⚠ Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

## FUEL FILLER FLAP

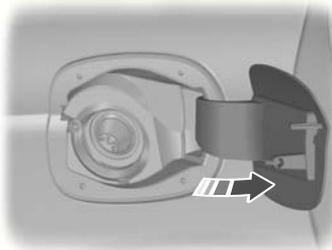
### WARNINGS

- ⚠ Take care when refuelling to avoid spilling any residual fuel from the fuel nozzle.
- ⚠ Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

### CAUTION

- ⚠ If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 200 millimetres (8 inches).

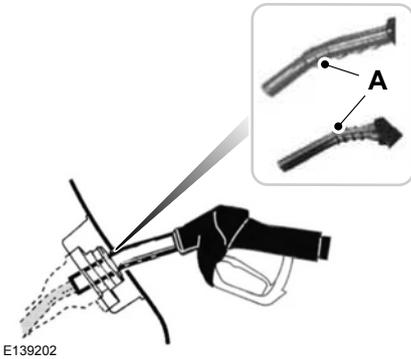
**Note:** Central locking also locks and unlocks the fuel filler flap. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).



E86613

1. Press the flap to open it. Open the flap fully until it engages.

# Fuel and Refuelling

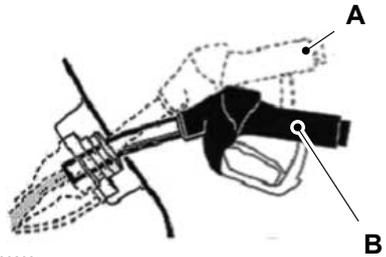


**Note:** When you insert the fuel nozzle, a spring loaded inhibitor will open if the correct size nozzle is detected. This helps to avoid filling up with the wrong fuel.

2. Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle **A**. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.

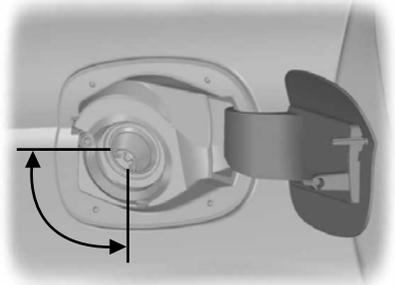
## WARNING

 Stop refuelling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.



- A Incorrect position  
B Correct position

3. Do not lift the nozzle during refuelling. This can affect the flow of fuel and shut off of the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

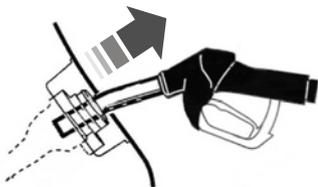


4. Operate the nozzle within the area shown.

## WARNINGS

-  We recommend that you remove the fuel nozzle slowly to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Alternatively you can wait 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle.
-  Do not remove the nozzle from its fully inserted position during the entire refuelling process.

# Fuel and Refuelling



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

## Refuelling with a fuel can

Use the funnel which is located in the spare wheel well.

## REFUELLING

### CAUTION

 Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## REFUELLING - E85

### CAUTION

 Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

After refuelling, allow 5 minutes of normal engine operation above 48 km/h (30 mph) to reduce the risk of an increased engine restart time.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

The CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures are derived from laboratory tests according to EEC Directive 80/1268/EEC and subsequent amendments and are carried out by all vehicle manufacturers.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle. Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors including; driving style, high speed driving, stop/start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted and towing etc.

Your Ford dealer can give you advice on improving your fuel consumption.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## Fuel and Refuelling

### 4-door and 5-door

#### Fuel Consumption Figures

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT Stage IV (92kW/125PS), 5-speed manual transmission	10 (28.2)	5.6 (50.4)	7.2 (39.2)	170
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT Stage V (88kW/120PS), 5-speed manual transmission	9.1 (31)	5.3 (53.3)	6.7 (42.2)	156
1.6L EcoBoost (118kW/160PS), 6-speed manual transmission	8.9 (31.7)	5.3 (53.3)	6.6 (42.8)	155
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4 Stage IV (107kW/145PS)	11.2 (25.2)	6 (47.1)	7.9 (35.8)	189
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4 Stage V (107kW/145PS)	11.3 (25)	6 (47.1)	8 (35.3)	184
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4 (149kW/203PS), 6-speed manual transmission	10.4 (27.2)	6 (47.1)	7.6 (37.2)	176
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4 (177kW/240PS), 6-speed manual transmission	10.4 (27.2)	6 (47.1)	7.6 (37.2)	176
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4 (149kW/203PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	10.7 (26.4)	6 (47.1)	7.7 (36.7)	179
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4 (177kW/240PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	10.9 (26.4)	6 (47.1)	7.7 (36.7)	179
2.3L Duratec-HE - MI4 (118kW/160PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	13.8 (20.5)	6.7 (42.2)	9.3 (30.4)	223

## Fuel and Refuelling

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission without start-stop	6 (47.1)	4.2 (67.3)	4.9 (57.6)	129
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission with start-stop ECONETIC	5 (56.5)	3.9 (72.4)	4.3 (65.7)	114
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission with start-stop	5.6 (50.4)	4.2 (67.3)	4.7 (60.1)	125
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage IV, 6-speed manual transmission	7.5 (37.7)	4.8 (58.9)	5.8 (48.7)	154
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, 6-speed manual transmission	6.1 (46.3)	4.2 (67.3)	4.9 (57.6)	129
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage IV (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission ECONETIC	6.4 (44.1)	4.6 (61.4)	5.3 (53.3)	139
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage IV (100kW/136PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	9.7 (29.1)	5.5 (51.4)	7.1 (39.8)	187
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, 6-speed automatic transmission	7.2 (39.2)	4.7 (60.1)	5.6 (50.4)	149
2.2L Duratorq-TDCi - DW (129kW/175PS), 6-speed manual transmission	8.4 (33.6)	4.9 (57.6)	6.2 (45.6)	165
2.2L Duratorq-TDCi - DW (147kW/200PS)	7.8 (36.2)	5 (56.5)	6 (47.1)	159

# Fuel and Refuelling

## Estate

### Fuel Consumption Figures

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT Stage IV (92kW/125PS), 5-speed manual transmission	10 (28.2)	5.6 (50.4)	7.2 (39.2)	170
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT Stage V (88kW/120PS), 5-speed manual transmission	9.1 (31)	5.3 (53.3)	6.7 (42.2)	156
1.6L EcoBoost (118kW/160PS), 6-speed manual transmission	8.9 (31.7)	5.3 (53.3)	6.6 (42.8)	155
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4 Stage IV (107kW/145PS)	11.2 (25.2)	6 (47.1)	7.9 (35.8)	189
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4 Stage V (107kW/145PS)	11.3 (25)	6 (47.1)	8 (35.3)	184
2.0L EcoBoost (149kW/203PS), 6-speed manual transmission	10.4 (27.2)	6 (47.1)	7.6 (37.2)	176
2.0L EcoBoost (177kW/240PS), 6-speed manual transmission	10.4 (27.2)	6 (47.1)	7.6 (37.2)	176
2.0L EcoBoost (149kW/203PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	10.7 (26.4)	6 (47.1)	7.7 (36.7)	179
2.0L EcoBoost (177kW/240PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	10.9 (26.4)	6 (47.1)	7.7 (36.7)	179
2.3L Duratec-HE (118kW/160PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	13.8 (20.5)	6.7 (42.2)	9.3 (30.4)	223

## Fuel and Refuelling

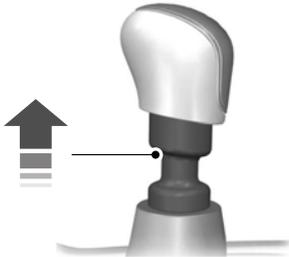
Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission without start-stop	6 (47.1)	4.2 (67.3)	4.9 (57.6)	129
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission with start-stop ECONETIC	5 (56.5)	3.9 (72.4)	4.3 (65.7)	114
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission with start-stop	5.6 (50.4)	4.2 (67.3)	4.7 (60.1)	125
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage IV	7.5 (37.7)	4.8 (58.9)	5.8 (48.7)	154
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, 6-speed manual transmission	6.1 (46.3)	4.2 (67.3)	4.9 (57.6)	129
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW (85kW/115PS), 6-speed manual transmission ECONETIC	6.4 (44.1)	4.6 (61.4)	5.3 (53.3)	139
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage IV (100kW/136PS), 6-speed automatic transmission	9.7 (29.1)	5.5 (51.4)	7.1 (39.8)	187
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, 6-speed automatic transmission	7.2 (39.2)	4.7 (60.1)	5.6 (50.4)	149
2.2L Duratorq-TDCi - DW (129kW/175PS), 6-speed manual transmission	8.4 (33.6)	4.9 (57.6)	6.2 (45.6)	165
2.2L Duratorq-TDCi - DW (147kW/200PS)	7.8 (36.2)	5 (56.5)	6 (47.1)	159

# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### CAUTION

 Do not engage reverse gear when the vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### Selector lever positions



E80836

- P Park
- R Reverse

- N Neutral
- D Drive
- S Sport mode and manual shifting

### WARNING

 Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.

**Note:** A cold engine has a higher idle speed. This will increase the tendency for your vehicle to **creep** when you have selected a drive gear.

Press the button on the selector lever to select reverse and park.

The selector lever position will be shown in the information display.

### Park

#### WARNINGS

 Select park only when your vehicle is stationary.

 **Apply the parking brake and select park before leaving your vehicle.** Make sure that the selector lever is latched in position.

**Note:** An audible warning will sound if you open the driver's door and you have not selected park.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

### Reverse

#### WARNING

 Select reverse only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

# Transmission

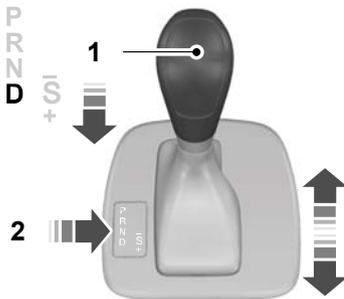
## Neutral

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

## Drive

Select drive to shift automatically through the forward gears.

## Sport mode and manual shifting



E80837

**Note:** A shift will occur only when the vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

**Note:** When you select position **S**, a gear change may occur depending on the accelerator pedal position in relation to actual vehicle speed.

Activate sport mode by moving the selector lever to position **S**. Sport mode will remain active until you shift manually up or down the gears.

Select manual shifting to shift manually through the forward gears. Push the selector lever forwards to shift down and pull it backwards to shift up.

## Drive modes

The transmission will select the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and driver input.

## Hints on driving with an automatic transmission

### Moving off

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

### Stopping

1. Release the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.

### Kickdown

Press the accelerator pedal fully with the selector lever in the drive position to select the next lowest gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

## Emergency park position release lever

Use the lever to move the selector lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a flat battery.

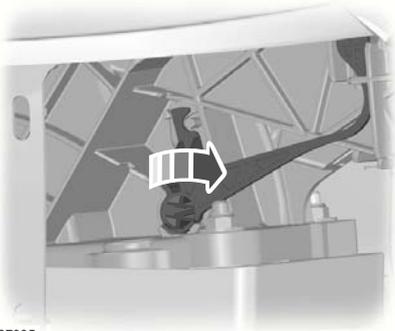
# Transmission

---



E87934

1. Remove the centre console side panel.



E87935

**Note:** *The lever is yellow.*

1. Insert a flat-bladed screwdriver into the slot and turn the screwdriver clockwise 90 degrees.

# Brakes

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash if you brake heavily.*

**Note:** *Occasional brake noise is normal and often does not indicate a concern. In normal operation, the system may emit occasional or intermittent squeal or groan noises when the brakes are applied. Such noises are usually caused by environmental conditions such as cold, heat, moisture, road dust, salt or mud.*

## Disc brakes

Wet brake discs result in reduced braking efficiency. Dab the brake pedal when driving from a car wash to remove the film of water.

## ABS

### WARNING



The ABS does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The ABS helps you to maintain full steering and directional stability when you brake heavily in an emergency, by preventing the road wheels from locking.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** *When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The ABS will not eliminate the risks when:

- you drive too close to the vehicle in front of you
- the vehicle is aquaplaning
- you take corners too fast
- the road surface is poor.

## PARKING BRAKE

### WARNING



Vehicles with an automatic transmission should always be left with the selector lever in position **P (Park)**.

- Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
- Pull the parking brake lever up smartly to its fullest extent.
- Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear or **P (Park)** and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear or **P (Park)** and turn the steering wheel towards the kerb.

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal firmly, pull the lever up slightly, depress the release button and push the lever down.

# Stability Control

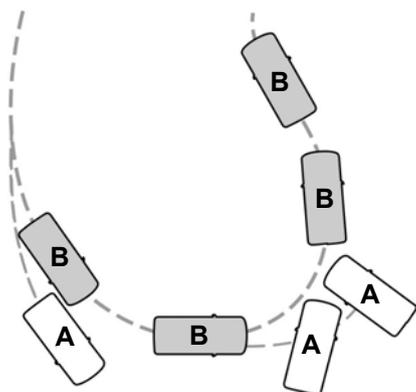
## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Electronic stability programme (ESP)

#### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



E72903

- A Without ESP
- B With ESP

The system supports stability when the vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

### Stability control (ESP) warning lamp

While driving, it flashes during activation of the system. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

### Emergency brake assist

#### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The system will detect when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It will provide maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. The system can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

**Note:** The system will be switched on automatically every time you switch the ignition on.

### Vehicles with stability control (ESP) switch



Press and hold the switch for one second. The switch will illuminate. A message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 98).

Press the switch again to turn the system on.

For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

### Vehicles without stability control (ESP) switch

Turn the system off and on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

# Hill Start Assist

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for a short time after you release the brake pedal. During this time, you have time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal and pull away. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

### WARNING



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and select first or reverse gear.

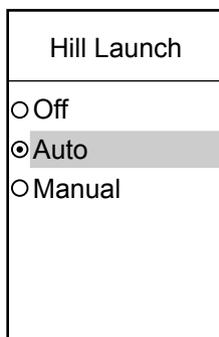
## USING HILL START ASSIST

The system can operate in either automatic or manual mode. If you select automatic mode, the system is activated automatically when the vehicle is on a slope and you press the brake pedal. If you select manual mode, you must activate the system using the brake pedal.

To set the system mode:



E70499



E74629

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Hill Launch** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting. If **Off** is selected, the system is switched off and cannot be activated either automatically or manually.
5. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. To return to the trip computer display directly, hold the left arrow button pressed.

# Hill Start Assist

---

**Note:** When the system is in manual activation mode, only use the system when pulling away uphill on gradients greater than 3%. If the vehicle is on the flat or on a downhill slope, an active system will make it difficult to pull away smoothly.

## Activating the system

### WARNINGS



You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the system. Any attempt to leave the vehicle will deactivate the system automatically.



The system is active only if the message **Hill Launch Assist active** is displayed in the information display. During all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

---

You can activate the system only if the following conditions have been met:

- The engine is running.
- The system is switched on (automatic or manual mode).
- The parking brake is fully disengaged.
- On vehicles with manual transmission, the clutch pedal is pressed.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, the driver door is closed.
- No failure mode is present.

To activate the system in automatic mode:

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal depressed.

2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope and the right driving direction is selected (first gear if the vehicle is pointing uphill, reverse gear if the vehicle is pointing downhill), the system will be activated automatically. **Hill Launch Assist active** will appear in the display.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two to three seconds.
4. Pull away using the accelerator and clutch pedal. The brakes will be released automatically.

To activate the system in manual mode:

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Quickly jab the brake pedal further until **Hill Launch Assist active** appears in the display. The system is now active.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two to three seconds.
4. Pull away using the accelerator and clutch pedal. The brakes will be released automatically.

### WARNING



When the system is active and the system detects a failure, the system is deactivated and the message **Please use park brake!** followed by **Hill Launch A. not available** will be displayed. The vehicle is still safe to be driven and can be repaired during the next service. The message **Hill Launch A. not available** will also be displayed with manual activation during a failure or if one of the activation criteria is not met. If you have switched the system off, no messages will be displayed.

---

# Hill Start Assist

---

## Deactivating the system

To deactivate the system, perform **one** of the following:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Wait for two to three seconds until the system deactivates automatically.
- If a forward gear was selected when the system became active, select reverse gear.
- If reverse gear was selected when the system became active, select a forward gear.

**Hill Launch Assist off** will appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Active suspension

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The active suspension provides improved handling, comfort and stability by continuously adjusting the damper properties to the current road and driving conditions. This system in conjunction with the ABS system offers the benefit of potentially shorter stopping distances on rough road surfaces.

Depending on your preferences and driving style, you can choose between three different settings:

### Comfort

This provides a softer driving feel.

### Normal

Normal setting.

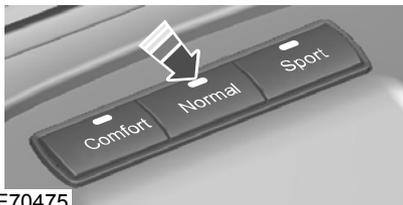
### Sport

This provides a harder, sportier ride.

## USING ACTIVE SUSPENSION

### Selecting a setting

**Note:** After you select a setting, you may not immediately notice a difference in the vehicle's handling. The effect of the continuously controlled damping depends on the road surface and driving conditions.



E70475

You can change the setting while driving.

## System malfunction

The active suspension system will switch off automatically if it malfunctions. The suspension will be set to a fail-safe condition that will enable you to continue driving but you will not be able to change the suspension setting. Have this checked as soon as possible.

# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### CAUTIONS



Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly detect obstacles.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.



The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.



The parking aid does not detect obstacles moving away from the vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move towards the vehicle again.



Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or rear fitted accessories e.g. a bicycle carrier, as the rear parking aid will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimetres (8 inches).

**Note:** On vehicles fitted with a tow ball arm, the parking aid is deactivated automatically when any trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket via a trailer tow module we have approved.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

**Note:** The parking aid may emit false tones if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if the vehicle is fully laden.

**Note:** The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensor and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the tone will switch off. As you continue, the inner sensors will detect rearward objects.

## PARKING AID

### Switching the parking aid on and off

**Note:** The parking aid switches off automatically when you start the engine or when you exceed 16 km/h (10 mph).

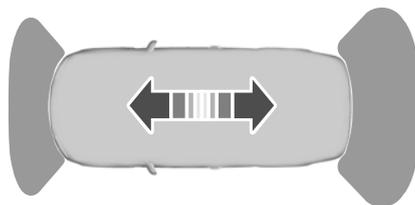
**Note:** The front and rear sensors are always activated or deactivated together.

The parking aid is per default off. To switch the parking aid on, press the switch in the instrument panel or select reverse gear.

The light in the switch illuminates when the parking aid is activated.

To turn it off, press the switch again.

### Manoeuvring with the parking aid



E72902

**Note:** If a high pitch warning tone sounds for three seconds and the light in the switch is flashing, it indicates a malfunction. The system will be disabled. Have the system checked by properly trained technicians.

## Parking Aids

---

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of up to approximately 150 centimetres (59 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper, 80 centimetres (31 inches) between the obstacle and front bumper and 50 centimetres (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone. A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 30 centimetres (12 inches).

You will hear an alternating tone from the front and rear if obstacles are closer than 30 centimetres (12 inches) to the front and rear bumpers.

# Rear view camera

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The camera is a visual aid for use when reversing.

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### CAUTIONS



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the camera briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimetres (8 inches).



Do not apply pressure to the camera.

**Note:** *Keep the camera free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects, degreaser, wax or organic products. Use only a soft cloth.*

During operation, guide lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and approximate distance from rearward objects.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA

### WARNINGS



The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.



The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.



Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is located on the luggage compartment lid near the handle.



E99105

## Activating the rear view camera

### CAUTION



The camera may not detect objects that are close to the vehicle.

With the ignition and the audio unit switched on, engage reverse gear. The image is displayed on the screen.

The camera may not operate correctly in the following conditions:

- Dark areas.
- Intense light.
- If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
- If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
- If the camera's view is obstructed, for example by mud.

## Using the display

### CAUTIONS



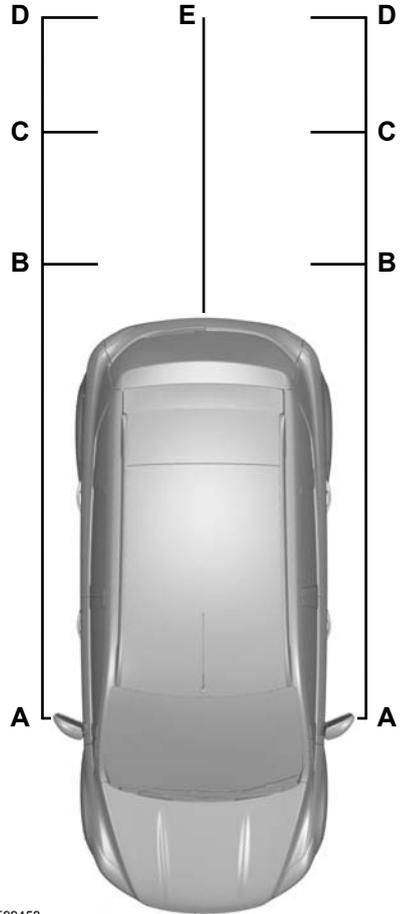
Obstacles above the camera position will not be shown. Inspect the area behind your vehicle if necessary.

# Rear view camera

## CAUTIONS

 Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

The lines show a projected vehicle path (based on the current steering wheel angle) and the distance from the exterior mirrors and rear bumper.



E99458

- A Exterior mirror clearance - 0.1 metre (4 inches)
- B Red - 0.3 metre (12 inches)
- C Amber - 1 metre (39 inches)

## Rear view camera

---

- D Amber - 2 metres (79 inches)
- E Amber - centre line of the projected vehicle path

**Note:** *When reversing with a trailer, the lines on the screen show the vehicle direction and not the trailer.*

### **Deactivating the rear view camera**

**Note:** *Disengage reverse gear. The display will stay on for a short period before switching off.*

The system will automatically switch off once the vehicle speed has reached approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).

### **Vehicles with parking aid**

The display will additionally show a coloured distance bar. This guide indicates the distance from the rear bumper to the detected obstacle.

These are colour coded as follows:

- Green - 0.8 to 1.5 metres (31 to 59 inches).
- Amber - 0.3 to 0.8 metre (12 to 31 inches).
- Red - 0.3 metre (12 inches) or less.

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed 30 km/h (20 mph).

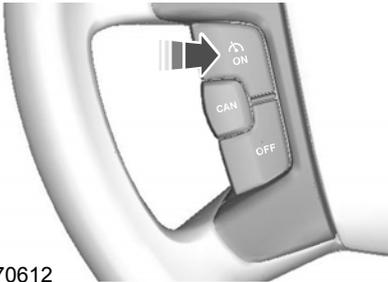
## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNING



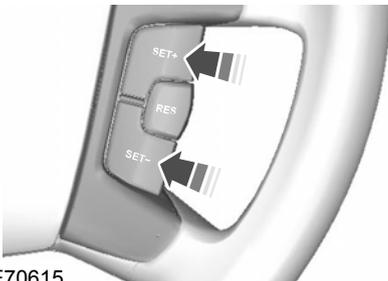
Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on twisty roads or when the road surface is slippery.

## Switching cruise control on



E70612

## Setting a speed



E70615

Press the **SET+** switch or the **SET-** switch to store and maintain your current speed. The cruise control indicator illuminates.

## Changing the set speed

### WARNING

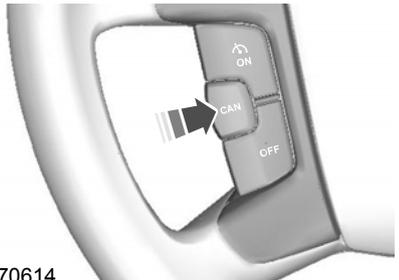


When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear and press the **RES** switch to assist the system in maintaining the set speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set.

Press the **SET+** switch or the **SET-** switch to accelerate or decelerate.

## Cancelling the set speed



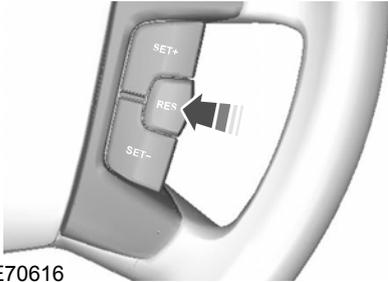
E70614

Press the brake pedal or the **CAN** switch. The system will no longer control your speed. The cruise control indicator will go off but the system will retain the speed that you previously set.

# Cruise Control

---

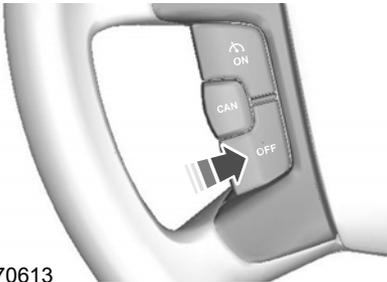
## Resuming the set speed



E70616

Press the **RES** switch. The cruise control indicator illuminates and the system will attempt to resume the speed that you previously set.

## Switching cruise control off



E70613

Press the **OFF** switch. The system will not retain the speed that you previously set. The cruise control indicator will go off.

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system is not a collision warning or avoidance system. The separate forward alert function provides a collision warning and mitigation feature. See **Forward alert function** (page 172). You must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.



When driving you are responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when adaptive cruise control is used. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and intervene when adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



The system does not brake for slow or stationary vehicles, pedestrians, objects in the road, oncoming and crossing vehicles.

### CAUTIONS



Only use adaptive cruise control when conditions are favourable, for example on motorways and main roads with steady free flowing traffic.



Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



Do not use on icy or slippery roads.



Do not use the system when entering or leaving a motorway.



The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations it may detect a vehicle other than the one expected or not detect any vehicle at all.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is activated, you may hear some unusual sounds during automatic braking. This is normal and caused by the automatic braking system.

**Note:** Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects, including vehicle front protectors and additional lights which may prevent the sensor from operating.

The system is designed to help you maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead. The system is intended to provide enhanced operation of the vehicle when following other vehicles which are in the same lane and travelling in the same direction.

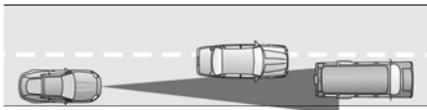
The system is based on the use of a radar sensor which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle. This beam will detect any vehicle ahead within the system's range.

The radar sensor is mounted behind the front grille.

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

## Detection beam issues

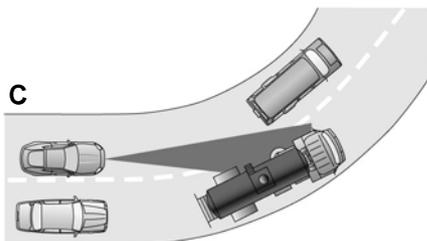
**A**



**B**



**C**



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane (**A**). Motorcycles may be detected late, or not at all. (**B**)
- With vehicles in front when going into and coming out of a bend (**C**). The detection beam will not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

## Automatic braking with ACC

### WARNINGS

 You must take immediate action once alerted, as the adaptive cruise control braking will not be sufficient to keep a safe distance to the vehicle in front.

 In some cases there may be no warning or the warning may be delayed. You should always apply the brakes when necessary.

 When following a vehicle in front of you, adaptive cruise control will not automatically decelerate to a stop.

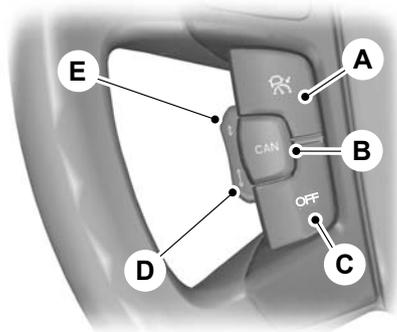
The system will automatically brake for you, if required to maintain the set gap between your vehicle and the one detected in front. This braking capacity is limited to approximately 30% of the total manual braking capacity to ensure smooth and comfortable cruising. If the car needs to brake more heavily than this, and you do not intervene by braking manually, an alarm will sound and a warning symbol will be displayed in the cluster.

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

## Vehicles without speed limiter



E124908

- A ACC on
- B ACC cancel
- C ACC off
- D ACC gap increase
- E ACC gap decrease

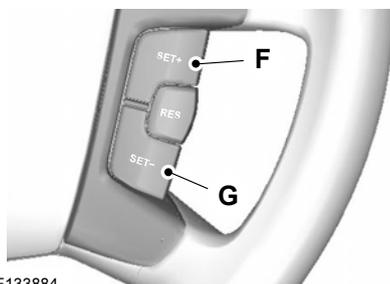
- D ACC gap increase
- E ACC gap decrease

## Switching the system on

Press switch **A**. The system is set to standby mode.

## Setting a speed

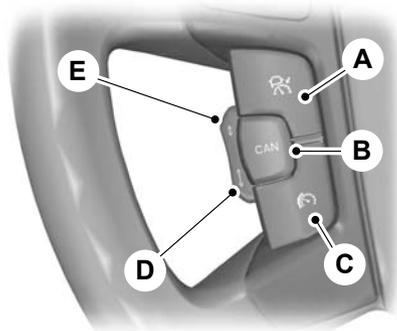
**Note:** The system must be in standby mode.



E133884

- F Set speed increase
- G Set speed decrease

## Vehicles with speed limiter



E124909

- A ACC on/off
- B ACC cancel
- C Speed limiter on/off

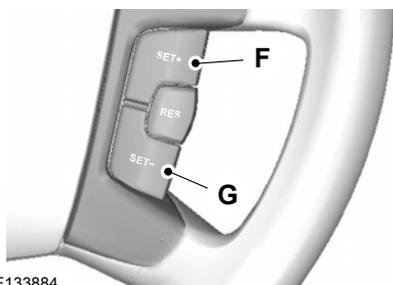
Press switch **F** or switch **G** to select your desired cruise speed. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

## Changing the set speed

**Note:** Vehicle speed may be increased and decreased at intervals of 5 km/h or 5 mph.

**Note:** If the system does not react to these changes the reason may be that the gap interval to the vehicle in front prevents an increase in speed.

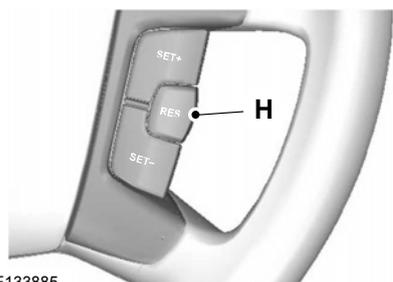
# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)



E133884

Press switch **F** to increase or switch **G** to decrease the set speed until the desired set speed is shown in the information display. The vehicle speed will gradually change to the selected speed.

**Note:** Smaller increases of 1 km/h or 1 mph may be set by pressing switch **H**.



E133885

H ACC resume

## Setting the vehicle gap

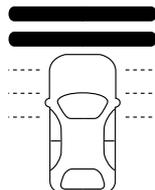
### CAUTION

 Use the appropriate gap setting in accordance with local traffic regulations.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependant and therefore the distance will automatically adjust with your speed. For example on a gap setting of four bars, the time gap is 1.8 seconds. This will mean that at a speed of 100 km/h (62 mph), the distance to the vehicle in front will be maintained at 50 metres (164 feet).

**Note:** If the accelerator is depressed for a short period, for example when overtaking, the system is temporarily deactivated and then reactivated when the accelerator pedal is released. A message is displayed in the information display.

**Note:** The gap setting will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.



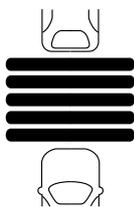
E82311

The distance between you and the vehicle detected in front is maintained by a variable setting. There are five steps which are represented by horizontal bars displayed in the information display. One bar denotes the smallest gap and five bars indicate the largest gap. These bars are shown empty when in standby mode and filled when in active mode.

If no vehicle is detected in front, then only your vehicle is displayed in the information display below the bars. The system will maintain the set speed when conditions permit. The set gap is maintained and displayed.

If a vehicle is detected by the sensor, the display will show another vehicle above the horizontal bars:

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)



E82312

This is a follow mode, and the system will accelerate or decelerate as necessary to maintain the set gap.

Press switch **E** to decrease the gap or switch **D** to increase the gap. The gap selected will be represented by the number of bars in the display.

**Note:** The recommended gap setting is four to five bars.

## Temporarily deactivating the system

**Note:** The system is cancelled when the gear lever is moved to a neutral position or if the accelerator pedal or clutch is depressed for a long period of time

Press either the brake or switch **B** to cancel the system. The system will return to standby mode allowing you full manual control of the vehicle. The set speed and gap setting are retained in the memory.

To resume adaptive cruise control press switch **H**. The system will resume with the previously set speed and vehicle gap setting if conditions permit.

## Switching the system off

### Vehicles without speed limiter

Press switch **C** to turn the system off.

**Note:** When deactivating the system by pressing switch **C**, the stored speed is not retained.

### Vehicles with speed limiter

Press switch **A** to turn the system off.

**Note:** When deactivating the system by pressing switch **A**, the stored speed is not retained.

### Automatic deactivation

**Note:** If the engine speed drops too low, a message is displayed in the information display instructing you to change down a gear (manual transmission only). If you do not follow this recommendation then the system will go into automatic deactivation mode.

**Note:** The system will not operate if the electronic stability programme (ESP) has been manually switched off.

The system is dependent on various other safety systems, for example ABS and ESP. If any of these systems are malfunctioning or reacting to an emergency, the system is automatically deactivated.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and the message is displayed in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 98). You must then intervene and adapt your driving and speed to vehicles in front.

An automatic deactivation can be due to the:

- vehicle speed falling below 30 km/h (20 mph)
- wheels losing traction
- brake temperature is high, for example when driving on mountainous or hilly roads
- engine speed is too low
- radar sensor is covered
- parking brake or electric parking brake (EPB) is applied.

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

---

## FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION

### WARNINGS



Never wait for a collision warning. When driving you are responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the system is used.



The system will only react to vehicles in front travelling in the same direction and will not react to slow or stationary vehicles.



Never drive in a manner to provoke the system. The system is designed to assist in emergencies only.

### CAUTIONS



Warnings may be triggered late, be absent or triggered unnecessarily due to detection beam issues. See **Principle of Operation** (page 167).



The system uses the same radar sensors as adaptive cruise control and therefore has the same limitations. See **Principle of Operation** (page 167).

**Note:** *The brake support system only reduces the collision speed if you brake immediately once alerted.*

**Note:** *If the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly then braking is implemented with full brake function, even if the force on the pedal is light.*

**Note:** *Brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking and the brakes are applied gently, which may be noticed as a slight jerk.*

**Note:** *The collision alerts will only occur if the system is switched on, however the brake support is always on and cannot be turned off.*

**Note:** *The system may be used with or without the Adaptive cruise control system being activated.*

The system assists you by warning of the risk of a collision with a vehicle in front.

The system alerts you by warning chimes and a visual warning in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 98).

Brake support is activated to enable full braking effectiveness, and reduce the severity of a collision with the vehicle in front.

## Switching the system on and off

**Note:** *When the system is switched off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).*

**Note:** *The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.*

The system can be switched on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

## Adjusting the warning sensitivity

You may adjust the system warning sensitivity using the buttons on the steering wheel. See **General Information** (page 85). This controls how early the visual and audible warning is activated.

# Speed Limiter

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

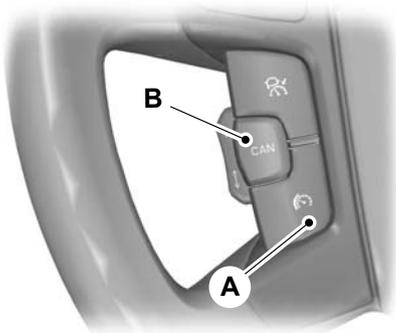
The system allows you to set a speed, to which the vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of the vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

## USING THE SPEED LIMITER

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.

Press button **A** to switch the system on and off. The information display will prompt for a speed to be set.

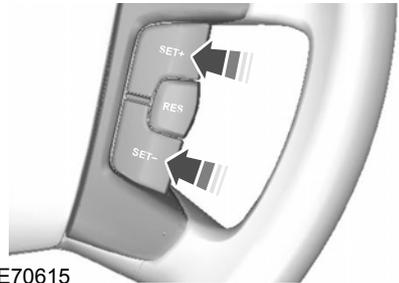
**Note:** *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period if required, for example when overtaking.*



E124874

### Setting the speed limit

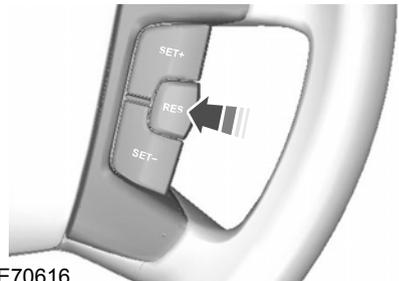
Use the cruise control switches to alter the maximum speed setting.



E70615

Press the **SET+** switch or the **SET-** switch to select your desired speed limit. The speed is indicated in the information display and stored as the set speed.

Press button **B** to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm deactivation by showing the set speed crossed out.



E70616

Press the **RES** button to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm the system is active by showing the set speed again.

### Intentionally exceeding the speed limit

Depress the accelerator hard close to the full pedal travel and the limit will temporarily deactivate. The system will reactivate once the vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

# Speed Limiter

---

## **System warnings**

If the set limit is accidentally exceeded the information display will show the set speed flashing together with an audible warning chime.

If the set limit is intentionally exceeded the information display will show the set speed crossed out.

# Driver Alert

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



Take regular rest breaks as required and do not wait for the system to warn you if you feel tired.



Take rest breaks only where it is safe to do so.



Certain driving styles and behaviour may result in the system issuing a warning even if you are not feeling tired.

### CAUTIONS



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadworks construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windscreen repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is intended as a driver aid when driving on fast main roads and motorways.

**Note:** The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system automatically monitors your driving behaviour using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that you are becoming drowsy or there is a deterioration in your driving, the system will alert you.

## USING DRIVER ALERT

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** The system status will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

Activate the system using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Once activated the system will calculate your alertness level based upon your driving behaviour in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

### System warnings

**Note:** The system will not issue warnings below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that a rest should be taken. This message will only appear for a short time. If a rest is not then taken a further warning may be issued which will remain in the information display until cancelled. See **Information Messages** (page 98).

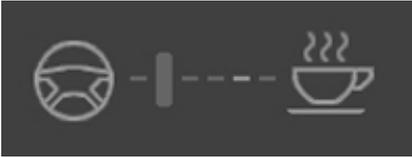
Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

# Driver Alert

## System display

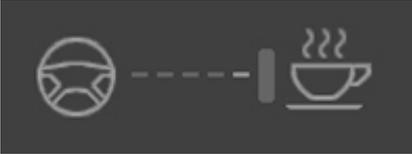
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a coloured bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that a rest should be taken as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the colour turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green - No rest required.
- Yellow - First (temporary) warning.
- Red - Second warning.

**Note:** The alertness level will be shown in grey if the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if the vehicle speed drops below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

## Resetting the system

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

# Lane Departure Warning

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



Lane markings may not always be properly tracked by the sensor. Other structures or objects may sometimes be incorrectly detected as a lane marking, resulting in a false or missed warning.

### CAUTIONS



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadworks construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windscreen repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is intended as a driver aid when driving on fast main roads and motorways.

**Note:** The system may not operate during hard braking or acceleration and, when you are intentionally steering the vehicle.

**Note:** The system will operate with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.

**Note:** The system will only operate above vehicle speeds of approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

A sensor is mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system will automatically detect and track the lane markings on the road. If it detects that the vehicle is unintentionally drifting towards the lane boundaries then a visual warning will be displayed in the information display. There is also a warning given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

## USING LANE DEPARTURE WARNING

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** When the system is switched off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

# Lane Departure Warning



E131360

- A System on
- B System off

Activate the system using the switches on the indicator stalk.

## Setting the steering wheel vibration level

The system has three intensity levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

## Setting the system sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you of a dangerous situation. The system has two sensitivity levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

## System warnings



E131363

A column of lane markings is displayed either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are colour coded as follows:

- Green - The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Red - The vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. Take immediate safe action to reposition the vehicle.
- Grey - The relevant lane boundary will be suppressed.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- The direction indicator for that side of the vehicle is on.
- During hard acceleration and braking, or if direct steering is applied.
- Vehicle speed is outside the operating limits
- If there is an ABS or Stability Control (ESP) intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

If the lane markings turn red or a vibration is felt through the steering wheel you must take immediate and safe action to align the vehicle and correct any unintended lane drift.

# Load Carrying

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS

-  Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
-  Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
-  Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
-  Do not drive with the tailgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle identification** (page 244).
-  Heavy loads, when placed in the passenger compartment, should be on folded rear seats as shown. See **Rear Seats** (page 124).

### CAUTIONS

-  Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.
-  Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.
-  Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.



E97377

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

### Estate



E86912

# Load Carrying

## 4-door and 5-door



E86913

## SLIDING LOADSPACE FLOOR

### WARNING



Do not slide the loadspace floor rearwards when the vehicle is standing on an incline of 15 degrees or more and facing uphill.

### CAUTION



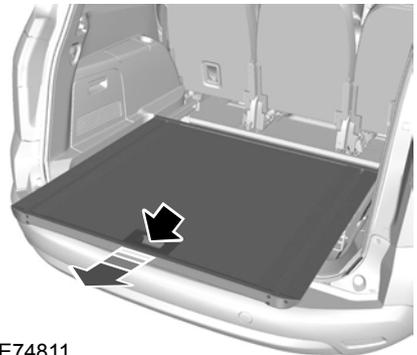
The maximum permissible weight on the sliding loadspace floor is 200 kilogrammes (441 pounds).

The maximum permissible weight on the end of the sliding loadspace floor when the floor is in the fully extended position (slid outside the luggage compartment) is 120 kilogrammes (265 pounds).



E74810

Press the unlocking handle and pull the loadspace floor rearwards. It will stop and engage at a midway position.



E74811

To slide it out fully, press the unlocking handle again and pull it out until it engages in the end position.

To slide it forwards, press the unlocking handle and push it forwards.

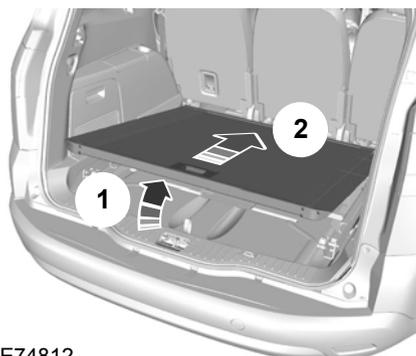
**Note:** You do not have to exert as much pressure on the unlocking handle if you push the loadspace floor forwards slightly when operating it.

# Load Carrying

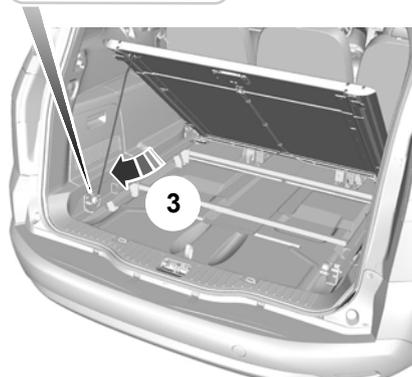
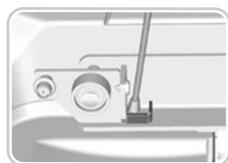
## Storage compartment

A storage compartment is located in the floor at the rear of the luggage compartment.

To gain access to the storage compartment, lift up the sliding loadspace floor as follows:



E74812



E74813

1. Press the unlocking handle and pull the loadspace floor rearwards a short way.
2. Lift up the rear of the floor (1).
3. Push the floor forwards until it engages at the front (2).
4. Release the support leg from the clip on the underside of the floor.
5. Insert the end into the square retainer in the left-hand rail (3).
6. Lift the storage compartment cover using the loop.

To return the loadspace floor to the normal position:

1. Hold the floor with one hand and release the support leg with the other hand.
2. Insert the support leg back into the clip.

# Load Carrying

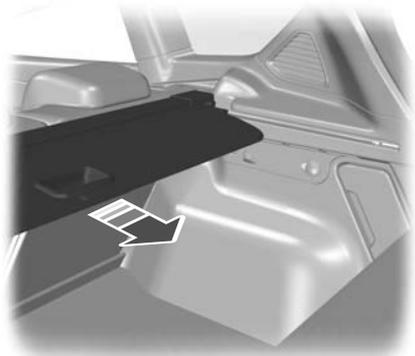
3. Lower the floor.
4. Press the unlocking handle and pull the loadspace floor rearwards until it drops into position on the rails.

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

### Vehicles with a sliding loadspace floor

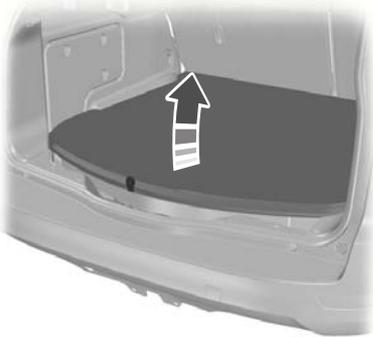
Raise the loadspace floor to gain access to the storage compartment. See **Sliding Loadspace Floor** (page 180).

### Vehicles without a sliding loadspace floor

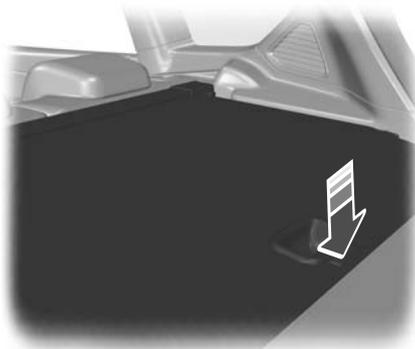


E112571

Pull out the cover until it locks.



E87689



E112572

Release it from the retaining points by pressing below the handle. Let it roll slowly back into the case.

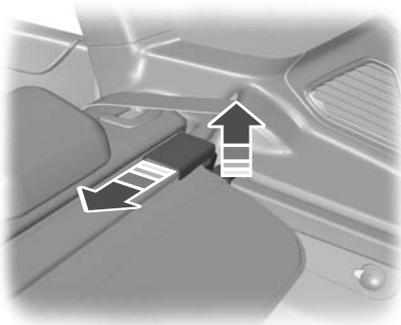
## LUGGAGE COVERS

### WARNING



Do not place objects on the luggage cover.

# Load Carrying



E112588

To remove or install the cover, push either end of the case inwards.

## Stowing the luggage cover - Estate without full size spare wheel



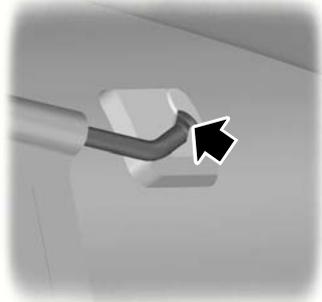
E134798

Space is provided under the luggage compartment floor.

## CARGO NETS

### Luggage retention net

#### Installing the net



E87052

1. Push the ends of the upper bar towards each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.



E87053

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 179).

# Load Carrying



E87054

3. Tighten the belts.

## Removing the net



E87135

1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

### Roof rack

#### WARNINGS

- ⚠ If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.
- ⚠ Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

#### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load of 75 kilogrammes (165 pounds) (including the roof rack).

Check the security of the roof rack and tighten its fittings as follows:

- before starting
- after driving 50 kilometres (30 miles)
- at 1 000 kilometres (600 miles) intervals.

To minimise windnoise when the roof rack is not in use, cross rails should be moved rearwards and placed together. To reduce fuel consumption, cross rails should be removed when not in use.

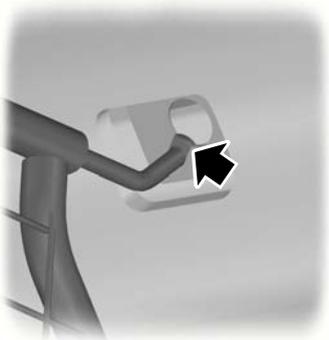
## DOG GUARD

#### CAUTION

- ⚠ Keep a distance of at least one centimetre between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.

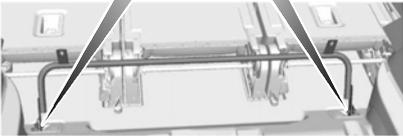
# Load Carrying

## Installing behind the front seats



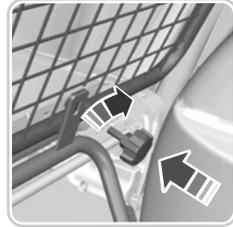
E86848

1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille towards each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.



E87782

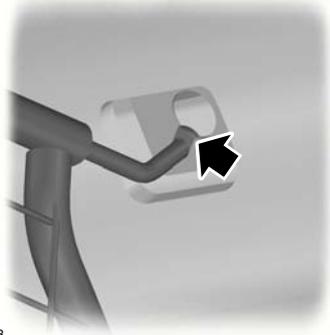
2. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points. Do not tighten the screws.



E87783

3. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Tighten the screws at the lower anchor points.
5. Tighten the handwheels.

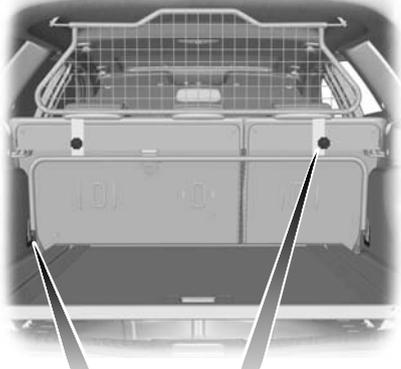
## Installing behind the rear seats



E86848

# Load Carrying

1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille towards each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.



E104424

2. Remove two screws from both the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 179).
3. Attach the lower bar to the grille with the handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Attach the dog guard lower bar to the luggage anchor points, secure with the new supplied screws.
5. Tighten the handwheels.

Remove in the reverse order.

## LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES

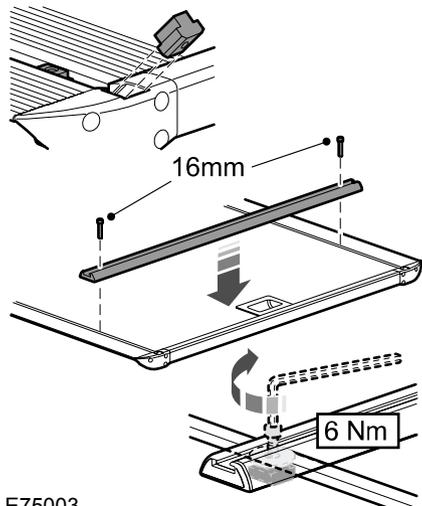
### WARNING

 Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of 60 kilogrammes (132 pounds) on two load retaining fixtures and 30 kilogrammes (66 pounds) on one.

Check the security of the load retaining fixtures and tighten its fittings as follows:

- before starting
- after driving 50 kilometres (30 miles)
- at 1 000 kilometres (600 miles) intervals.

### Installing the load retaining fixtures



E75003

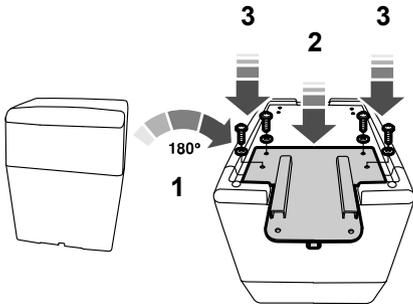
# Load Carrying

## Installing the load bracket

### WARNINGS

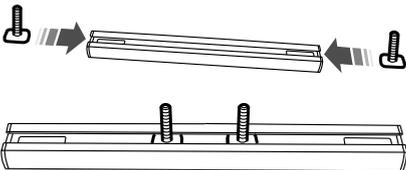
 Install the load bracket with the longest section towards the rear of the vehicle. If you install it the wrong way round, it may not hold the box in place in the event of an accident.

 Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of 20 kilogrammes (44 pounds).



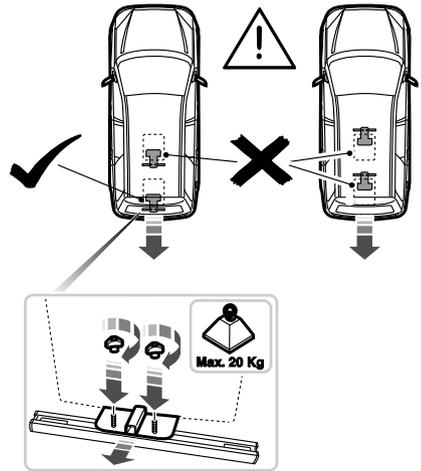
E76378

1. Turn the box over.
2. Position the load bracket.
3. Secure the load bracket with four screws.



E76379

4. Slide the captured bolts onto the load retaining fixture.



E76380

5. Secure the load bracket with the two wing nuts.
6. Remove in the reverse order.

# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph).



The rear tyre pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).



Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle identification** (page 244).

### CAUTION



Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, i.e. vertical weight on the tow ball, of 90 kilogrammes (198 pounds).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. Check with your dealer first.*

Place loads as low and central to the axle(s) of the trailer as possible. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in the trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability.

The stability of the vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependant on the quality of the trailer.

In high altitude regions above 1 000 metres (3 281 feet), the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every additional 1 000 metres (3 281 feet).

## Steep gradients

### WARNING



The overrun brake on a trailer is not controlled by ABS.

Change down a gear before you reach a steep downhill gradient.

## TOW BALL

### WARNINGS



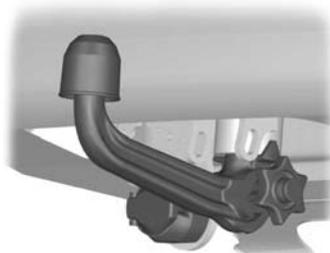
When not in use, always transport the tow ball arm securely fastened in the luggage compartment.



Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of the vehicle and the trailer depends on this.



Do not use any tools for mounting or dismounting the tow ball arm. Do not modify the trailer coupling. Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

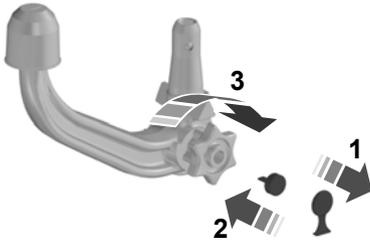


E71328

A 13-pin trailer socket and the tow ball arm seat are provided underneath the rear bumper. Turn the trailer socket down through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

# Towing

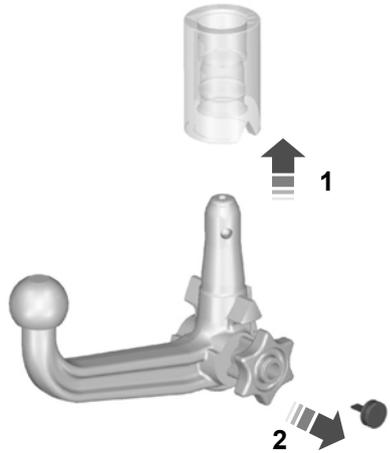
## Unlocking the tow ball arm mechanism



E71329

1. Remove the protecting cap (1). Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock (2).
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out and turn it clockwise until it clicks (3).
3. The red mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.
4. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is unlocked.

## Inserting the tow ball arm



E71330

### WARNING

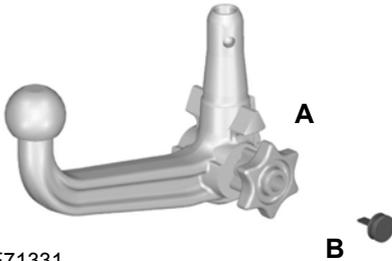


The tow ball arm may only be inserted when completely unlocked.

1. Pull out the plug.
2. Insert the tow ball arm vertically and press it upwards until it engages (1). Do not hold your hand near the handwheel.
3. The green mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.
4. To lock, turn the key anti-clockwise and remove the key (2).
5. Pull the protecting cap from the key bow and press it onto the lock.

# Towing

## Driving with a trailer



E71331

### WARNING

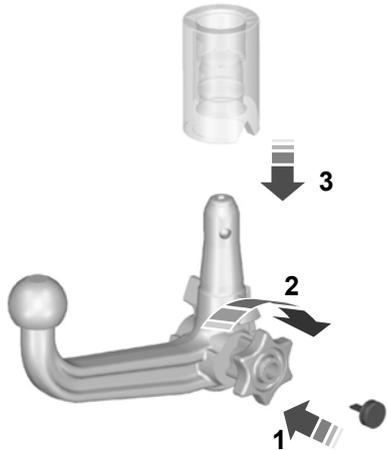


If any of the below conditions cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked. Check that:

- the green marks are aligned
- the handwheel (**A**) is correctly fitted to the tow ball arm
- you have removed the key (**B**)
- the tow ball arm is securely positioned. It must not move when jerked.

## Removing the tow ball arm



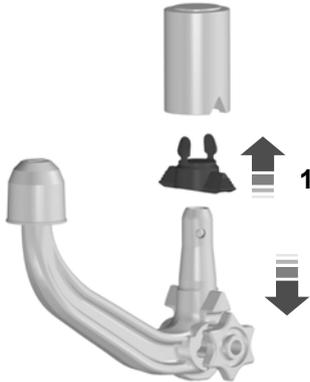
E71332

1. Unhitch the trailer.
2. Remove the protecting cap. Press the cap into the key bow. Insert the key and unlock (**1**).
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out, turn it clockwise against the stop (**2**) and remove the tow ball arm (**3**).
4. Release the handwheel.

When unlocked in this way, the tow ball arm can be reinserted at any time.

# Towing

## Driving without a trailer



E94771

1. Remove the tow ball arm.
2. Insert the plug into its seat (1).

### WARNING



Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.

## Maintenance

### WARNING



Remove the tow ball arm and protect the seat with the plug before steam cleaning your vehicle.

Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces, and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

In case of loss, replacement keys are available from the manufacturer by stating the number on the lock cylinder.

# Driving Hints

---

## RUNNING-IN

### Tyres

#### WARNING



New tyres need to be run-in for approximately 500 kilometres (300 miles). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

---

### Brakes and clutch

#### WARNING



Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 kilometres (100 miles) in town and for the first 1500 kilometres (1000 miles) on motorways.

---

### Engine

#### CAUTION



Avoid driving too fast during the first 1500 kilometres (1000 miles). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labour the engine.

---

## GENERAL DRIVING POINTS - VEHICLES WITH: SPORTS SUSPENSION

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is reduced compared to other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -30°C (-22°F).

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

### Driving through water

#### CAUTIONS



Drive through water in an emergency only, and not as part of normal driving.



Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

---

In an emergency, the vehicle can be driven through water to a maximum depth of 200 millimetres (8 inches) and at a maximum speed of 10 km/h (6 mph). Extra caution should be exercised when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the vehicle. After driving through water, and as soon as it is safe to do so:

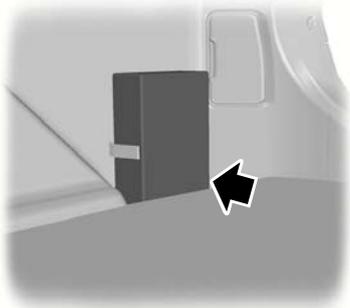
- Depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the vehicle's lights are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

# Roadside Emergencies

## FIRST AID KIT

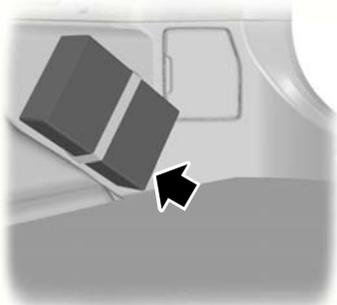
Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

### 4-door



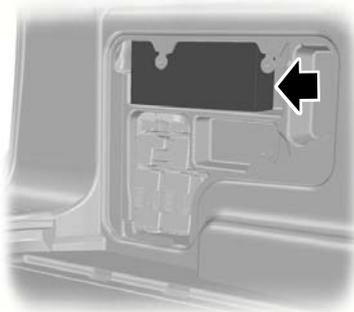
E87654

### 5-door



E87655

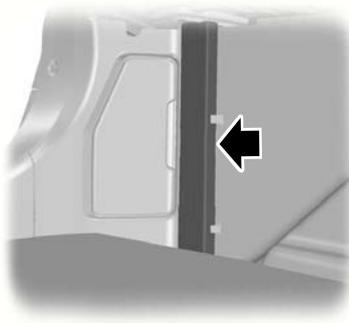
### Estate



E87656

## WARNING TRIANGLE

### 4-door and 5-door



E87657

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

### Estate and vehicles with tyre repair kit

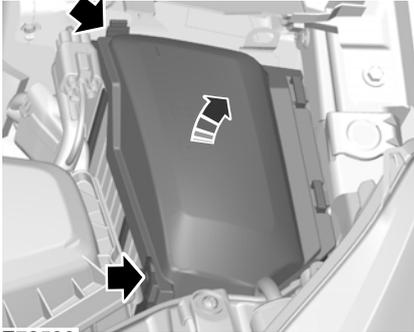
Space is provided under the carpet.

See **Rear Under Floor Storage** (page 182).

# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

### Engine compartment fuse box



E72588

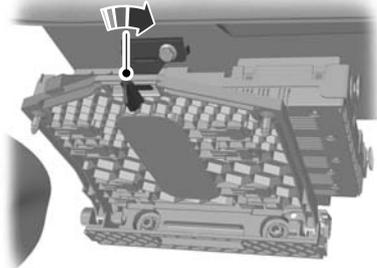
### Central fuse box

#### All vehicles



E72589

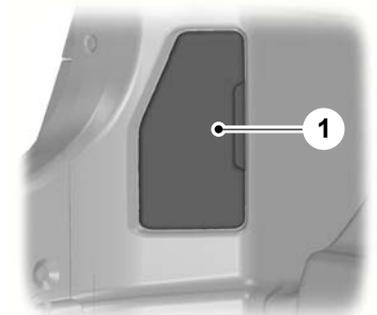
1. Pinch the retaining clips to release the cover.



E72590

2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the knob through 90 degrees and release the fuse box from the retaining bracket.
4. Lower the fuse box cover and pull it towards you.
5. Install in the reverse order.

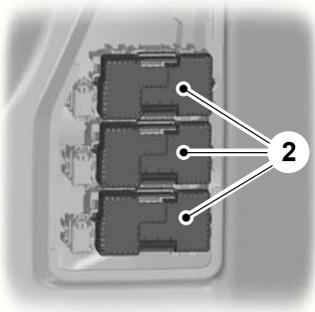
### Rear fuse box - 4-door and 5-door



E87481

1. Remove the cover.

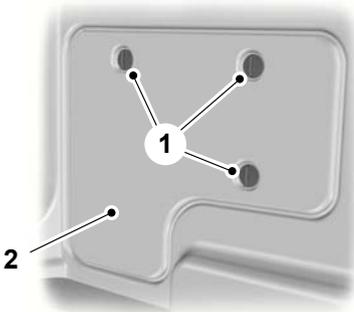
# Fuses



E87482

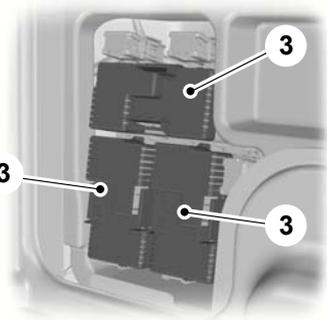
2. Remove the relevant fuse box cover.

## Rear fuse box - Estate



E87479

1. Release the catches.
2. Remove the cover.



E87480

3. Remove the relevant fuse box cover.

## CHANGING A FUSE

### WARNINGS



Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by a properly trained technician.



Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before touching or attempting to change a fuse.

### CAUTION



Fit a replacement fuse with the same rating as the one you have removed.

**Note:** You can identify a blown fuse by a break in the filament.

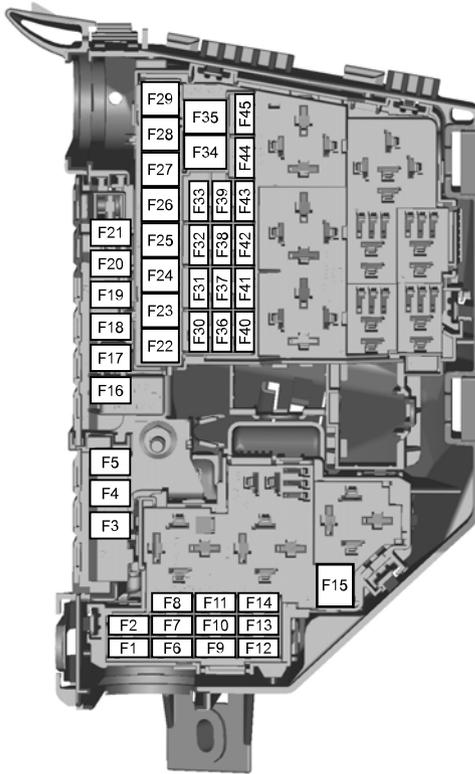
**Note:** All fuses, except high current fuses, are a push fit.

**Note:** A fuse puller is located in the engine compartment fuse box.

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine compartment fuse box



E75525

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F1	10	Transmission control module (AWF21)
F1	15	Transmission control module (MPS6)
F2	5	Glow plug monitoring (diesel engines)

## Fuses

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Ampere rating</b>	<b>Circuits protected</b>
F2	5	Vaporiser glow plug monitoring (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F3	70 <sup>1</sup>	Engine cooling fan - twin fan (2.3L Duratec-HE and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi automatic)
F3	80 <sup>1</sup>	Electric hydraulic power steering (EHPAS) (1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT Stage V, 1.6L EcoBoost SCTi, 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V and 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F4	60	Glow plugs
F5	60	Engine cooling fan (1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V, 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi manual, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT Stage V, 2.0L Duratec-HE, 2.3L Duratec-HE, 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi)
F5	70	Engine cooling fan - twin fan (1.6L EcoBoost SCTi)
F6	7.5	HEGO sensor (1.6L Duratorq-TDCi)
F6	10	HEGO sensors 1, CMS sensor, Oxygen sensor (engine management)
F6	20	Vaporiser glow plug (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V, 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F7	5	Relay coils
F8	10	Powertrain control module, Fuel metering unit, MAF sensor, fuel rail pressure control valve (engine management).
F8	20	Powertrain control module (2.0L EcoBoost SCTi and 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F8	15	Powertrain control module (1.6L EcoBoost SCTi, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F9	10	MAF Sensor, Fuel Injectors, Variable Intake Valve, Variable Exhaust Valve, ignition coils (engine management).
F9	5	Fuel pump vaporiser (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F9	7.5	MAF Sensor, EGR bypass Valve, Fuel pump vaporiser (2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V) (engine management)

## Fuses

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Ampere rating</b>	<b>Circuits protected</b>
F9	7.5	Degas valve, TMAF sensor, active grille shutter, bypass valve, relay coil, auxiliary run on, water pump (1.6L EcoBoost SCTi).
F10	10	Engine control module (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT Stage V)
F10	7.5	Auxiliary run on, water pump (1.6L EcoBoost SCTi)
F11	10	PCV Valve, VCV Valve, Water in Fuel Sensor, Sonic Purge Valve, Swirl Control Valve, Variable Intake Valve, EGR Valve, IVVT Oil Control Valve (engine management). T.MAF sensor, variable exhaust timing valve, active grille shutter, cannister purge valve, turbo control valve, waste gate valve (engine management).
F11	10	Turbo control valve, MAF sensor, active grille shutter, EGR valve, VCV valve (1.6L Duratorq-TDCi)
F11	5	MAF sensor, Water in Fuel Sensor, Active grille shutter, inlet metering valve (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V).
F11	7.5	Fuel rail pressure, fuel metering unit, fuel pump vaporiser, active grille shutter (2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F11	10	Turbo control valve, variable intake timing valve, variable exhaust timing valve, cannister purge valve, electrical bypass valve (1.6L EcoBoost SCTi).
F12	15	Ignition coils (1.6L EcoBoost SCTi and 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi)
F12	10	Coil on Plug; Canister Purge Valve, Power Steering Pressure Switch (engine management)
F12	10	EGR throttle, variable turbo control (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi)
F12	5	Relay coils (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V, 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V and 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi)
F13	15	Air conditioning
F14	15	Diesel filter heater (2.0L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V and 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi)
F14	10	HEGO sensor (2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F15	40	Starter relay

## Fuses

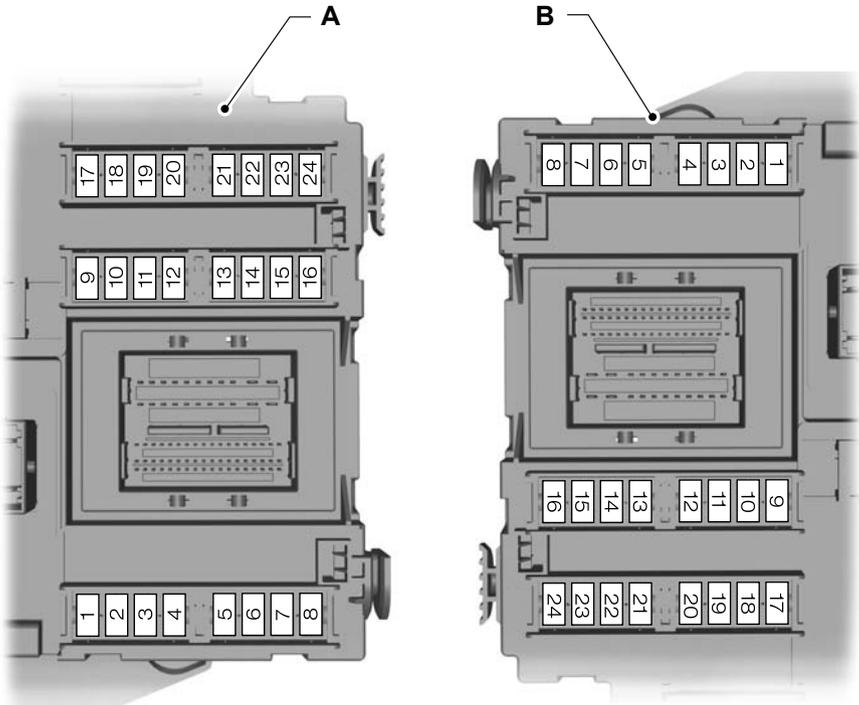
<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Ampere rating</b>	<b>Circuits protected</b>
F16	80	Diesel auxiliary heater (PTC)
F17	60	Central fuse box supply A
F18	60	Central fuse box supply B
F19	60	Rear fuse box supply C
F20	60	Rear fuse box supply D
F21	30	VQM/non VQM: Cluster/Audio/AC/FLR
F22	30	Windscreen wiper module
F23	30	Heated rear window
F24	30	Headlamp washer
F25	30	ABS valves
F26	40	ABS pump
F27	25	Fuel fired heater
F28	40	Heater blower
F29	–	Not used
F30	5	ABS 30 feed
F31	15	Horn
F32	5	Fuel fired heater - remote control
F33	5	Light switch module, engine compartment fuse box coils
F34	40	Heated windscreen (left-hand side)
F35	40	Heated windscreen (right-hand side)
F36	15	Rear wiper 15 feed
F37	7.5	Heated front washer jets/FLR + FSM KL15
F38	10	PCM/TCM/EHPAS 15 feed
F39	15	Adaptive front lighting system (AFS)
F40	5	Headlamp levelling / AFS module
F41	20	Instrument panel

# Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F42	5	Cluster IP
F43	15	Audio/BVC module/DAB module
F44	5	Automatic AC / Manual AC
F45	5	FLR (Start Stop)

<sup>1</sup>Fit a replacement with the same rating as the one you have removed.

## Central fuse box



E124888

## Fuses

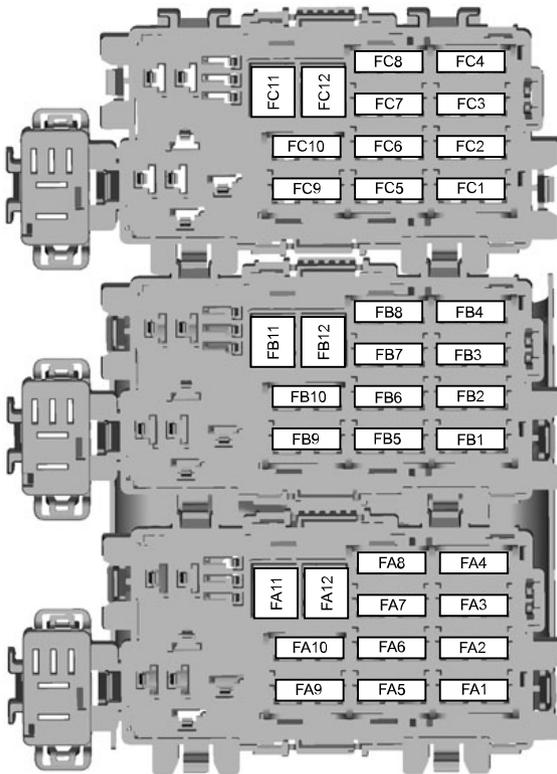
- A Left-hand drive
- B Right-hand drive

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F1	7.5	Steering wheel module
F2	5	Cluster
F3	10	Interior lamps
F4	5	Engine immobiliser
F5	7.5	Adaptive cruise control (ACC)
F6	5	Rain sensor
F7	20	Cigar lighter
F8	10	Fuel filler flap unlock supply
F9	15	Windscreen washers - rear
F10	15	Windscreen washers - front
F11	10	Luggage compartment release supply
F12	10	Fuel filler flap lock supply
F13	20	Fuel pump
F13	7.5	Fuel pump (2.2L Duratorq-TDCi Stage V)
F14	5	Remote frequency receiver, Interior motion sensor
F15	5	Ignition switch
F16	5	Battery backup sounder (alarm system), OBD II (board computer diagnostics)
F17	5	Steering wheel vibration actuator
F18	10	SRS (airbag) supply
F19	7.5	ABS, yaw rate sensor (ESP), electric parking brake (EPB), accelerator pedal supply
F20	7.5	Electronic feed, electronic fuse, Auto-dimming mirror, lane departure warning
F21	15	Radio supply

# Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F22	5	Brake lamp switch
F23	20	Sunroof
F24	5	Climate Control Module and Steering Column Unit supply

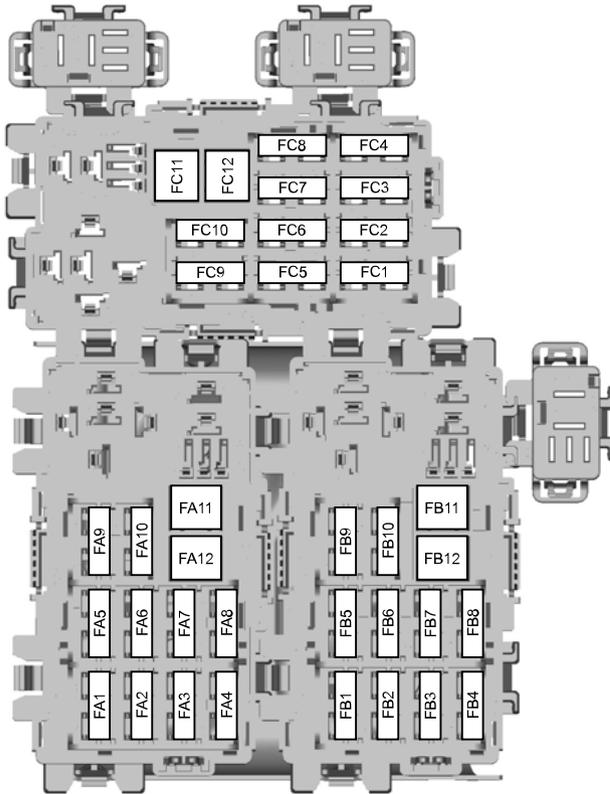
## Rear fuse box 4-door and 5-door



E87483

# Fuses

## Estate



E75526

Fuse	Ampererating	Circuits protected
FA1	25	Door module (left-hand front) (window up/down, central locking, electric folding mirror, heated mirror)
FA2	25	Door module (right-hand front) (window up/down, central locking, electric folding mirror, heated mirror)
FA3	25	Door module (left-hand rear) (window up/down)

## Fuses

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Ampererating</b>	<b>Circuits protected</b>
FA4	25	Door module (right-hand rear) (window up/down)
FA5	10	Rear locking (without rear door modules)
FA6	15	Auxiliary power socket
FA7	5	Relay coils
FA8	20	Keyless vehicle module
FA9	5	Relay coils VQM (Start Stop)
FA10	-	Not used
FA11	20	Accessories, trailer module
FA12	30	Electric driver's seat
FB1	-	Not used
FB2	15	Suspension module
FB3	15	Heated driver's seat
FB4	15	Heated front passenger seat
FB5	15	Left-hand rear heated seat
FB6	-	Not used
FB7	15	Right-hand rear heated seat
FB8	5	Parking aid, BLIS
FB9	30	Electric front passenger seat
FB10	10	Anti-theft alarm horn
FB11	-	Not used
FB12	-	Not used
FC1	-	Not used
FC2	-	Not used
FC3	-	Not used
FC4	-	Not used
FC5	20	Keyless vehicle
FC6	-	Not used

## Fuses

---

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Ampere rating</b>	<b>Circuits protected</b>
FC7	5	Seat memory function module
FC8	7.5	Rear seat entertainment/CD Changer
FC9	20	Audio amplifier
FC10	10	Sony audio system
FC11	–	Not used
FC12	–	Not used

# Vehicle recovery

## TOWING POINTS

### Towing eye location

The screw-in towing eye is located in the spare wheel well.

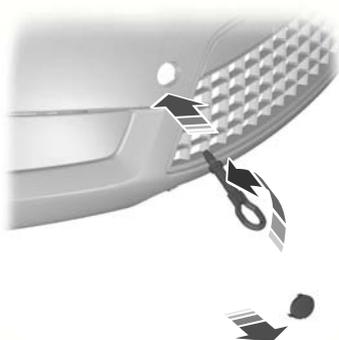
The towing eye must **always** be carried in the vehicle.

### Installing the towing eye

#### CAUTION

⚠ The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it **anti-clockwise** to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

### Front towing eye



E87280

### Rear towing eye



Insert your finger into the hole on the underside of the cover and prise off the cover. Install the towing eye.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### All vehicles

#### WARNINGS

- ⚠ Switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. The steering lock will engage and the direction indicators and brake lamps will not work if you do not.
- ⚠ The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

#### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.
- ⚠ Do not use a rigid tow bar on the front towing eye.

# Vehicle recovery

---

## CAUTIONS

-  Select neutral when your vehicle is being towed.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is towing.

## Vehicles with automatic transmission

### CAUTIONS

-  If a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph) and a distance of 20 kilometres (12 miles) is to be exceeded the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.
-  It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h (12 mph) or further than 20 kilometres (12 miles).
-  Do not tow your vehicle backwards.
-  In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.
-  Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford Authorised Repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialised tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following additional checks.

### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

### CAUTION



When carrying out maintenance checks, make sure that filler caps are fitted securely.

## Daily checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

## Check when refuelling

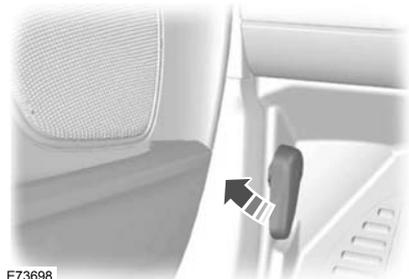
- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).
- Tyre pressures (when cold). See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).
- Tyre condition. See **Tyre Care** (page 238).

## Monthly checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Power steering fluid level. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of wheel nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).

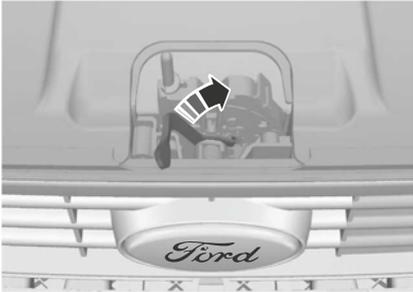
## OPENING AND CLOSING THE BONNET

### Opening the bonnet



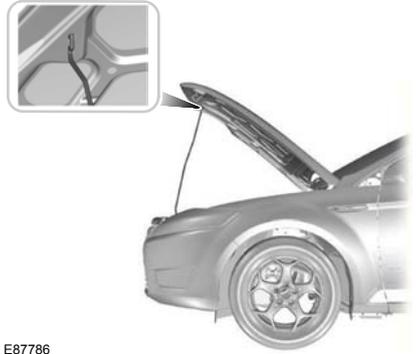
# Maintenance

---



E87785

Raise the bonnet slightly and move the catch towards the left-hand side of the vehicle.



E87786

Open the bonnet and support it with the strut.

## Closing the bonnet

### WARNING

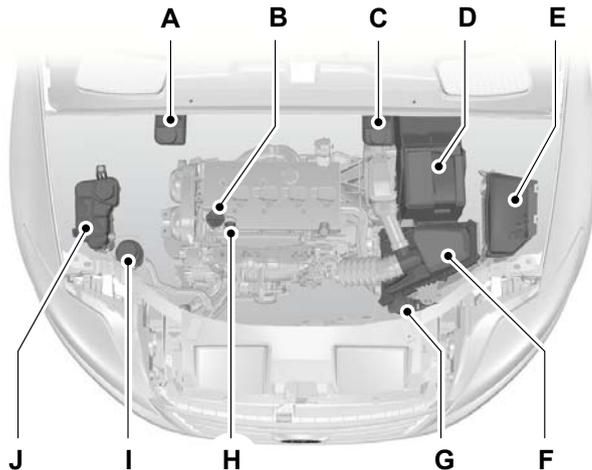


Make sure that the bonnet is closed properly.

Lower the bonnet and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 20 – 30 centimetres (8 - 11 inches).

# Maintenance

## UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATEC-16V TI-VCT (SIGMA)



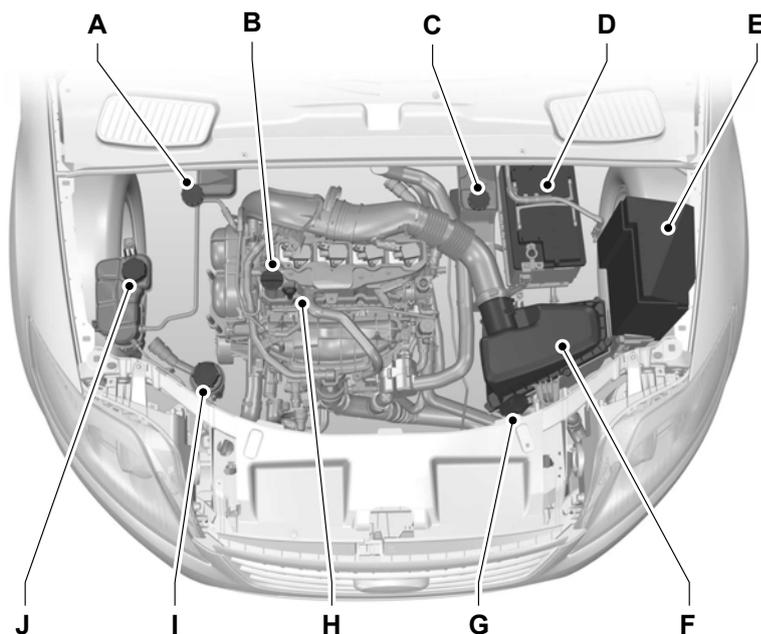
E87714

- A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- B Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- D Battery. See **Vehicle battery** (page 227).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 194).
- F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.
- G Screen washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).
- H Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- I Power steering fluid reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).
- J Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

<sup>1</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

# Maintenance

## UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 1.6L ECOBOOST SCTI (SIGMA)



E132430

- A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- B Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- D Battery. See **Vehicle battery** (page 227).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 194).
- F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.
- G Screen washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).
- H Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

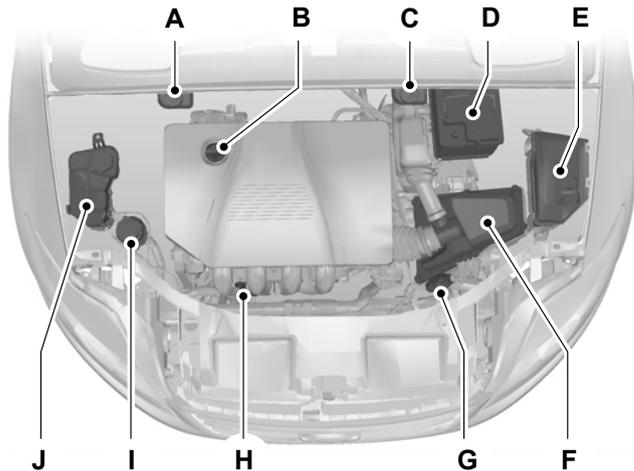
# Maintenance

I Power steering fluid reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).

J Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

<sup>1</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

## UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATEC-HE (MI4)



E73231

A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

B Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

D Battery. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 227).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 196).

F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.

G Screen washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).

H Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

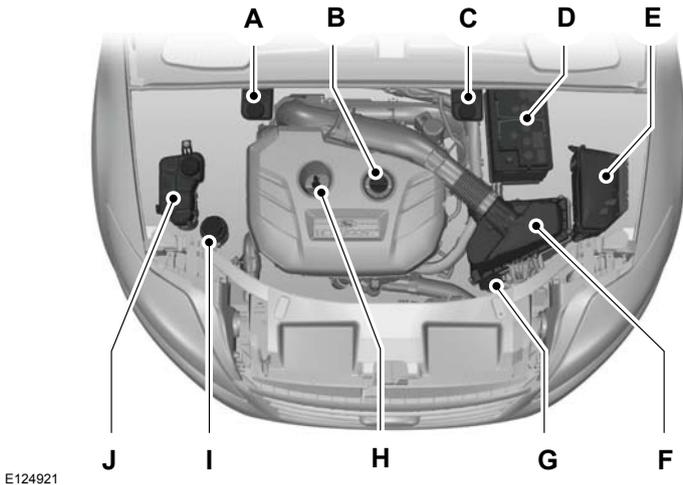
# Maintenance

I Power steering fluid reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).

J Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

<sup>1</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

## UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST SCTI (MI4)



A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

B Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

D Battery. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 227).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 196).

F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.

G Screen washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).

H Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

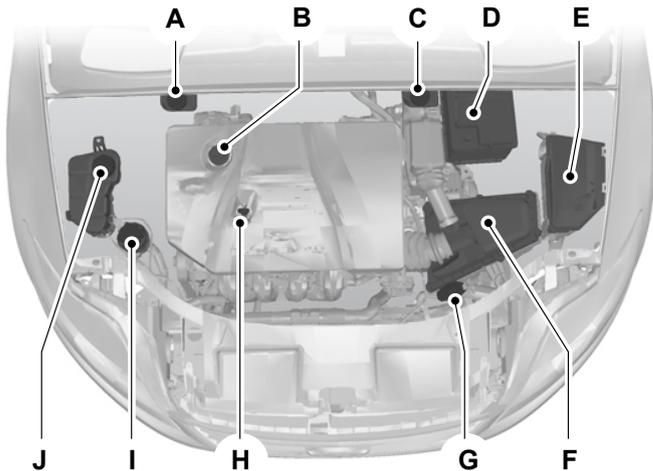
# Maintenance

I Power steering fluid reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).

J Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

<sup>†</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

## UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 2.3L DURATEC-HE (MI4)



E81313

A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

B Engine oil filler cap<sup>†</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

D Battery. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 227).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 196).

F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.

G Screen washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).

H Engine oil dipstick<sup>†</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

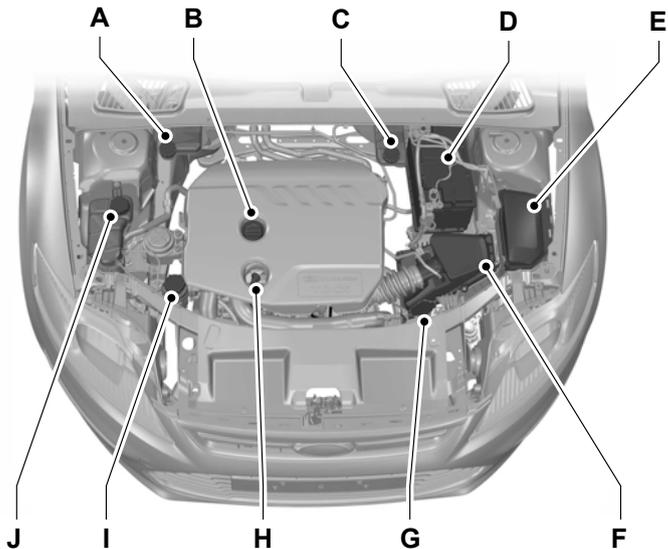
# Maintenance

I Power steering fluid reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).

J Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

<sup>1</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

## UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL



E135199

A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

B Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).

D Battery. See **Vehicle battery** (page 227).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 194).

F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.

G Screen washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).

# Maintenance

---

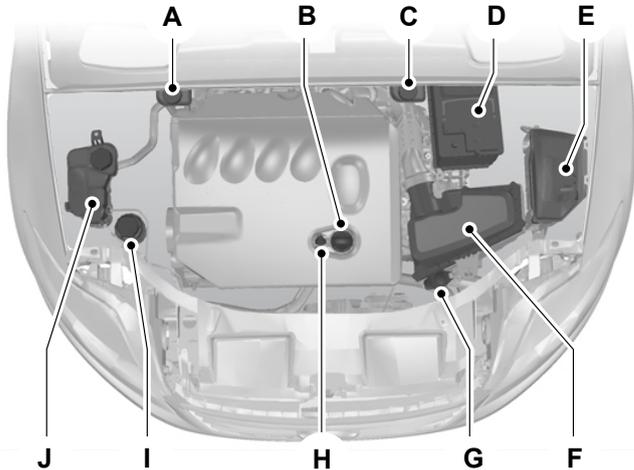
H Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).

I Power steering fluid reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).

J Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

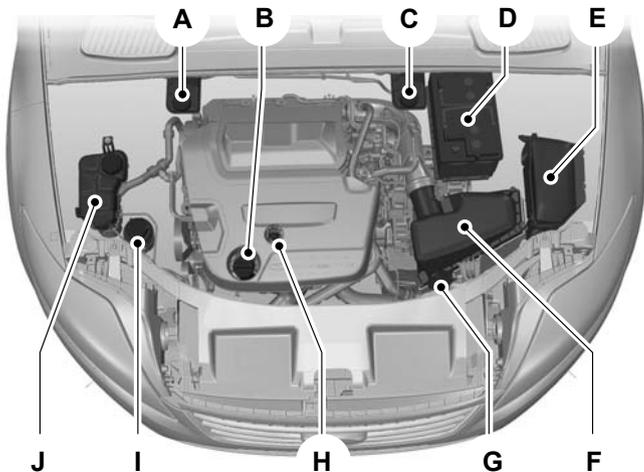
<sup>1</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

## UNDERBONNET OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



E73234

# Maintenance



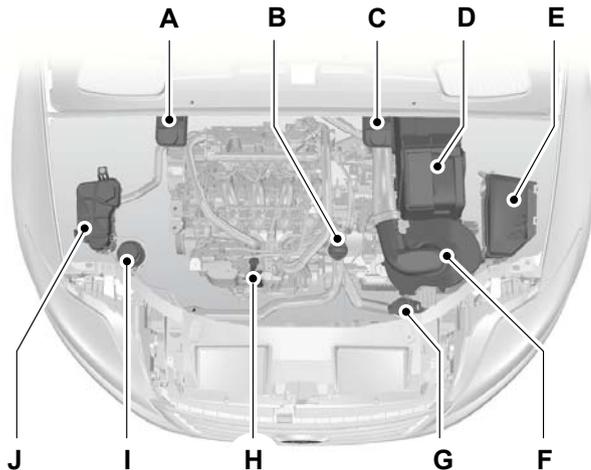
E124913

- A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- B Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- D Battery. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 227).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 196).
- F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.
- G Screen washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).
- H Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- I Power steering fluid reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).
- J Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

<sup>1</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

# Maintenance

## UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



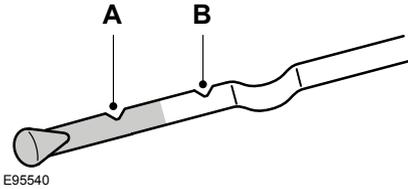
E87715

- A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive): See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- B Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive): See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
- D Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 227).
- E Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 194).
- F Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
- G Screen washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).
- H Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 220).
- I Power steering fluid reservoir: See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 221).
- J Engine coolant reservoir: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 220).

<sup>1</sup>The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.

# Maintenance

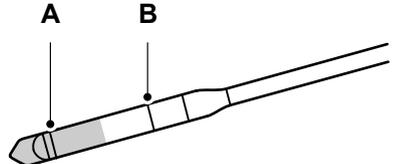
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATEC-16VTI-VCT (SIGMA)



E95540

- A MIN
- B MAX

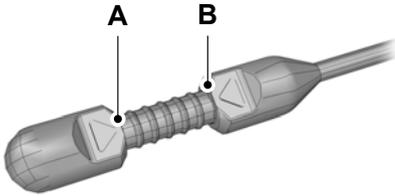
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L DURATEC-HE (MI4)/2.3L DURATEC-HE (MI4)



E92036

- A MIN
- B MAX

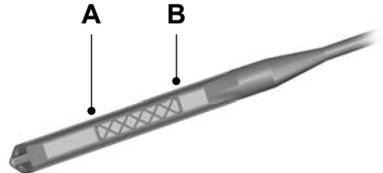
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L ECOBOOST SCTI (SIGMA)



E134114

- A MIN
- B MAX

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST SCTI (MI4)



E124917

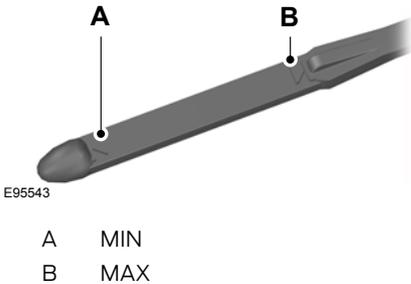
- A MIN
- B MAX

E134040

- A MIN
- B MAX

# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL/2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL/2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



## ENGINE OIL CHECK

### CAUTION

! Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they could damage the engine.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5000 kilometres (3000 miles).

## Checking the oil level

### CAUTION

! Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

**Note:** Check the level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

**Note:** Oil expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend a few millimetres beyond the **MAX** mark.

Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately.

## Topping up

### WARNINGS

! Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

! Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Remove the filler cap.

### WARNING

! Do not top up further than the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 222).

Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

## Checking the coolant level

### WARNING

! Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

# Maintenance

## CAUTION

- ! Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

**Note:** *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately.

## Topping up

### WARNINGS

- ! Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.
- ! Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.
- ! Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is hot. Wait for the engine to cool down.
- ! Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.

### CAUTIONS

- ! In an emergency, you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
- ! Prolonged use of incorrect dilution of the coolant can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Unscrew the cap **slowly**. Any pressure will escape slowly as you unscrew the cap.

## CAUTION

- ! Do not top up further than the **MAX** mark.

Top up with a 50/50 mixture of coolant and water using fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 222).

## BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

### WARNINGS

- ! Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford's performance standards.
- ! Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.
- ! If the level is at the **MIN** mark, have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

**Note:** *Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

**Note:** *The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 222).

## POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

### WARNING

- ! Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

# Maintenance

## CAUTION

 Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately.

## Topping up

Remove the filler cap.

## CAUTION

 Do not top up further than the **MAX** mark.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 222).

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

**Note:** *The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

When topping up, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Vehicle fluids

**Note:** *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your Warranty.*

Item	Specification	Viscosity Grade	Recommended fluid
Engine oil - petrol engines only	WSS-M2C948-B	5W-20	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Alternative engine oil - all petrol engines	WSS-M2C913-C	5W-30	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Engine oil - diesel engines	WSS-M2C913-C	5W-30	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B44-D	-	Motorcraft SuperPlus Anti-freeze

# Maintenance

Item	Specification	Viscosity Grade	Recommended fluid
Brake fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6	-	Motorcraft or Ford DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid
Power steering fluid	WSS-M2C204-A2	-	Ford Power Steering Fluid

Your engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit whilst maintaining the durability of your engine.

**Topping up the oil:** If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by **WSS-M2C913-C** or **WSS-M2C948-B** (petrol engines only), you must use **SAE 5W-30** that meets the specification defined by **ACEA A5/B5**.

Using topping up oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

Castrol engine oil recommended.



## Capacities

Variant	Item	Capacity in Litres (gallons)
All	Power steering system	MAX mark
All	Windscreen and rear window washer system	3.8 (0.8)
All	Fuel tank	70 (15.4)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	3.8 (0.8)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	Engine cooling system	6 (1.3)
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma)	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma)	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	3.8 (0.8)

## Maintenance

<b>Variant</b>	<b>Item</b>	<b>Capacity in Litres (gallons)</b>
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma)	Engine cooling system	6.5 (1.4)
2.0L Duratec-HE	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	4.3 (1.0)
2.0L Duratec-HE	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	3.9 (0.9)
2.0L Duratec-HE	Engine cooling system	6.2 (1.4)
2.0L EcoBoost SCTi	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	5.4 (1.2)
2.0L EcoBoost SCTi	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	5.1 (1.1)
2.0L EcoBoost SCTi	Engine cooling system	approx. 6.9 (1.5)
2.3L Duratec-HE	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	4.3 (1.0)
2.3L Duratec-HE	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	3.9 (0.9)
2.3L Duratec-HE	Engine cooling system	6.9 (1.5)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	3.8 (0.8)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	3.5 (0.8)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine cooling system	7.3 (1.6)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	5.5 (1.2)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	5 (1.1)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine cooling system	8.1 (1.8)
2.2L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	6 (1.3)
2.2L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	5.4 (1.2)
2.2L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine cooling system	8.4 (1.9)

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### WARNING



If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windscreen.

---

### CAUTIONS



Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.



Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.



Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.



Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

---

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

## Cleaning the headlamps

### CAUTIONS



Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.



Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

---

## Cleaning the rear window

### CAUTION



Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

---

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

## Cleaning the chrome trim

### CAUTION



Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

---

## Cleaning the alloy wheels

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.

**Note:** Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

**Note:** If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

**Note:** Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tyre cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurised stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

# Vehicle Care

---

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

## Body paintwork preservation

### CAUTIONS

-  Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.
  -  Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.
  -  Do not apply polish to the windscreen or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.
- 

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### Seat belts

#### WARNINGS

-  Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.
  -  Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seat belt retractor mechanism.
- 

Clean the seat belts with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let the seat belts dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

### Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens

#### WARNING

-  Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.
- 

## Rear windows

### CAUTIONS

-  Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.
  -  Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.
- 

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

### CAUTION

-  Remove apparently harmless looking substances from the paintwork immediately (e.g. bird droppings, tree resins, insect remains, tar spots, road salt and industrial fall out).
- 

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products is available from your Ford Dealer. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

# Vehicle battery

## JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNING



Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

### CAUTIONS



Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

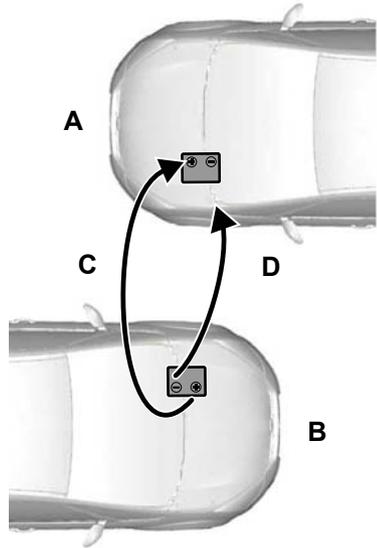


Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.



Do not disconnect the battery from the vehicle's electrical system.

## To connect the booster cables



E102925

- A Flat battery vehicle
- B Booster battery vehicle
- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle **B** with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle **A** (cable **C**).
4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle **B** to the ground connection of vehicle **A** (cable **D**). See **Battery connection points** (page 228).

# Vehicle battery

## CAUTIONS

- ⚠ **Do not connect to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.**
- ⚠ Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

## To start the engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle **B** at moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle **A**.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

## CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

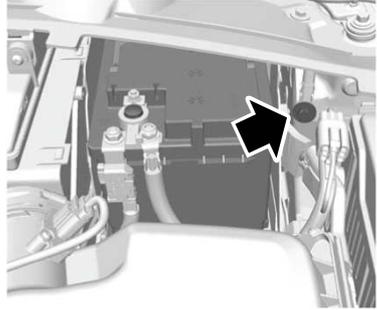
## CAUTION

- ⚠ For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.

**Note:** Where applicable, the audio system must be reprogrammed with the keycode.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 208).

## BATTERY CONNECTION POINTS



E114494

## CAUTION

- ⚠ **Do not connect to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.**

# Wheels and Tyres

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### CAUTIONS

-  Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.
-  If you change the diameter of the tyres from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.
-  If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with your dealer.

**Note:** Check your tyre pressures regularly to optimise fuel economy.

A decal with tyre pressure data is located in the driver's door opening at the B-pillar.

Check and set the tyre pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive the vehicle and when the tyres are cold.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Locking wheel nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from your dealer using the reference number certificate.

### Vehicles with a temporary spare wheel

#### WARNINGS

-  Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
-  Drive the shortest possible distances.

#### WARNINGS

-  Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.
-  Do not use snow chains on this type of wheel.
-  Do not drive through an automatic car wash.
-  Do not carry out any tyre repairs on a temporary spare wheel.

#### CAUTION

-  The ground clearance of your vehicle will be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.

**Note:** Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

## Vehicle jack

#### WARNINGS

-  The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.
-  Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.
-  Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.

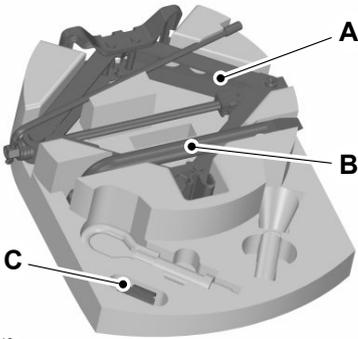
**Note:** Vehicles with a tyre repair kit are not equipped with a vehicle jack or a wheel brace.

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tyres.

# Wheels and Tyres

**Note:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 millimetres (3.1 inches).

## Vehicles without tyre repair kit



E86843

- A Jack
- B Wheel brace
- C Space for locking wheel nut key

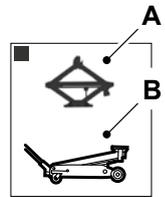
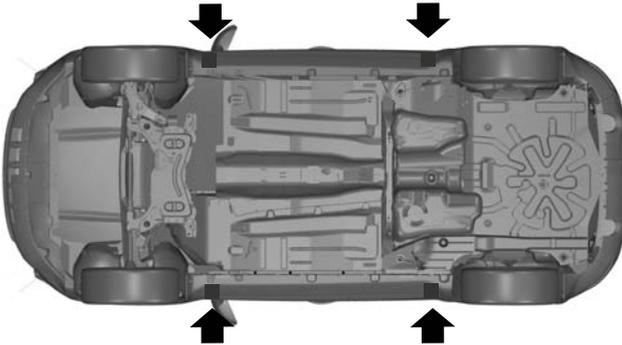
Your vehicle jack and wheel brace are located in the spare wheel well.

## Jacking and lifting points

### CAUTION

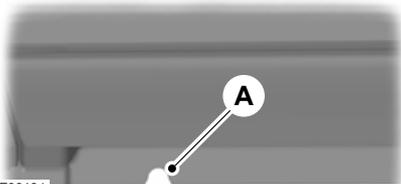
⚠ Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

# Wheels and Tyres



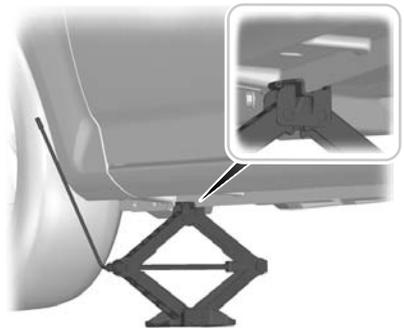
E92658

- A Emergency use only
- B Maintenance



E93184

Indentations in the sills **A** show the location of the jacking points.



E92932

# Wheels and Tyres



E93020

## Vehicles with side skirts



E95345

## Assembling the wheel brace

### Type one

#### WARNING



When returning the wheel brace extension to its original position, take care not to get your fingers caught.

**Note:** Make sure that the wheel brace is fully extended.



E122546

Extend the wheel brace.

### Type two

#### CAUTION



The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it anti-clockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

The screw-in towing eye is located in the spare wheel well.



E122502

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.

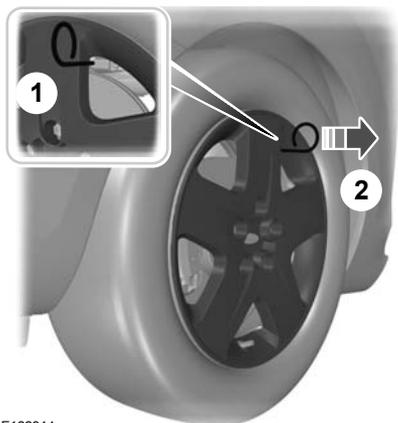
## Removing the wheel trim

### Type one

Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the rim and the trim and carefully remove the trim.

# Wheels and Tyres

## Type two



E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.
2. Remove the wheel trim.

**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

## Removing a road wheel

### WARNINGS

-  Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
-  Set up a warning triangle.
-  Make sure that the vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
-  Switch off the ignition and apply the parking brake.
-  If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park.
-  Have the passengers leave the vehicle.

### WARNINGS

-  Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
-  Make sure that the arrows on directional tyres point in the direction of rotation when the vehicle is moving forwards. If you have to fit a spare wheel with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction, have the tyre refitted in the correct direction by a properly trained technician.
-  Do not work underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.
-  Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

### CAUTION

-  Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

**Note:** The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.



E71948

1. Install the locking wheel nut key.

# Wheels and Tyres

2. Slacken the wheel nuts.
3. Jack up the vehicle until the tyre is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the wheel nuts and the wheel.

## Installing a road wheel

### WARNINGS

 Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).

 Do not fit run flat tyres on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact your dealer for more details regarding compatibility.

### CAUTION

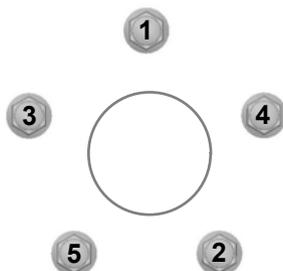
 Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**Note:** *The wheel nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).*

**Note:** *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the wheel nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking wheel nut key.



E75442

4. Partially tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).
7. Install the hub cap or cover using the ball of your hand.

### WARNING

 Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

## TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare tyre. In this case it will have an emergency tyre repair kit that can be used to repair **one** flat tyre.

The tyre repair kit is located in the spare wheel well.

# Wheels and Tyres

## General information

### WARNINGS

 Depending on the type and extent of tyre damage, some tyres can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all.

Loss of tyre pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

 Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has already been damaged as a result of being driven under inflated.

 Do not use the tyre repair kit on run flat tyres.

 Do not try to seal damage other than that located within the visible tread of the tyre.

 Do not try to seal damage to the tyre's sidewall.

The tyre repair kit seals most tyre punctures [with a diameter of up to six millimetres (1/4 inch)] to temporarily restore mobility.

Observe the following rules when using the kit:

- **Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving manoeuvres**, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer.
- The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tyre dealer, or to drive a maximum distance of 200 kilometres (125 miles).
- Do not exceed a **maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph)**.
- Keep the kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-22^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and  $+70^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $+158^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

## Using the tyre repair kit

### WARNINGS

 Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.

 Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended while in use.

### CAUTION

 Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes.

**Note:** Use the tyre repair kit only for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

- Park your vehicle at the roadside so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic and so that you are able to use the kit without being in danger.
- Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road, to make sure that the vehicle will not move.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign objects like nails or screws penetrating the tyre.
- Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (for example, inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine turned off.
- Replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle) is reached.
- Inform all other users of the vehicle that the tyre has been temporarily sealed with the tyre repair kit and make them aware of the special driving conditions to be observed.

# Wheels and Tyres

## Inflating the tyre

### WARNINGS

 Check the sidewall of the tyre prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre.

 Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping.

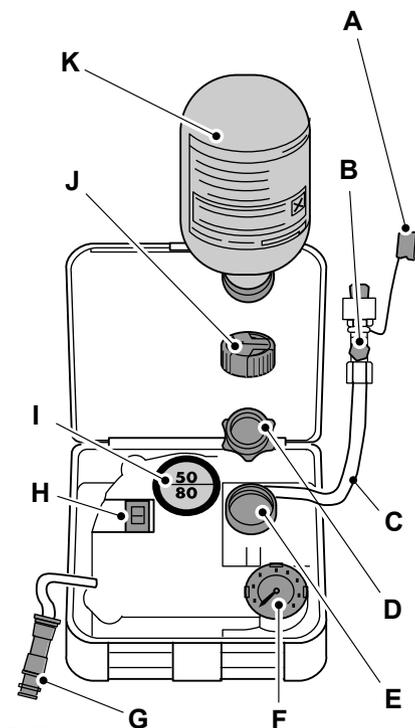
 Watch the sidewall of the tyre. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve **B**. Do not continue driving with this tyre.

 The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

 If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within seven minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. In this case, do not continue driving with this tyre.

### CAUTION

 Screwing the bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the bottle. Do not unscrew the bottle from the holder as the sealant will escape.



E94973

- A Protective cap
- B Pressure relief valve
- C Hose
- D Orange cap
- E Bottle holder
- F Pressure gauge
- G Power plug with cable
- H Compressor switch
- I Label
- J Bottle lid
- K Sealant bottle

# Wheels and Tyres

1. Open the lid of the tyre repair kit.
2. Peel off the label **I** showing the maximum permissible speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose **C** and the power plug with cable **G** out of the kit.
4. Unscrew the orange cap **D** and the bottle lid **J**.
5. Screw the sealant bottle **K** clockwise into the bottle holder **E** fully tight.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
7. Detach the protective cap **A** from the hose **C** and screw the hose **C** firmly onto the valve of the damaged tyre.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch **H** is in position **O**.
9. Insert the power plug **G** into the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket. See **Cigar Lighter** (page 127). See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 128).
10. Start the engine.
11. Move the compressor switch **H** to position **I**.
12. Inflate the tyre for no longer than seven minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 1.8 bar (26 psi) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi). Move the compressor switch **H** to position **O** and check the current tyre pressure with pressure gauge **F**.
13. Remove the power plug **G** from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket.
14. Quickly unscrew the hose **C** from the tyre valve and replace the protective cap **A**. Fasten the valve cap again.
15. Leave the sealant bottle **K** in the bottle holder **E**.
16. Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in the vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tyre pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately three kilometres (two miles) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

**Note:** When pumping in the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.

## WARNING



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behaviour or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop the vehicle. Recheck the tyre and its pressure. If the tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar (19 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tyre.

## Checking the tyre pressure

1. Stop the vehicle after driving approximately three kilometres (two miles). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tyre.
2. Attach the kit and read the tyre pressure from the pressure gauge **F**.
3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tyre is 1.3 bar (19 psi) or more, adjust it to the specified pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).
4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to top up the tyre.
5. Check the tyre pressure again from the pressure gauge **F**. If the tyre pressure is too high, deflate the tyre to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve **B**.

# Wheels and Tyres

- Once you have inflated the tyre to its correct tyre pressure, move the compressor switch **H** to position **O**, remove the power plug **G** from the socket, unscrew the hose **C**, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap **A**.
- Leave the sealant bottle **K** in the bottle holder **E** and store the kit away safely in its original location.
- Drive to the nearest tyre specialist to get the damaged tyre replaced. Before the tyre is removed from the rim, inform your tyre dealer that the tyre contains sealant. Renew the kit as soon as possible after it has been used once.

**Note:** Remember that emergency roadside tyre repair kits only provide temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tyre repair after usage of tyre repair kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tyre specialist for advice.

## WARNING



Before driving, make sure the tyre is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240). Monitor the tyre pressure until the sealed tyre is replaced.

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to your dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

## TYRE CARE



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tyres of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tyres from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals of between 5000 and 10000 kilometres (3000 and 6000 miles).

## CAUTION



Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tyres when you are parking.

If you have to mount a kerb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the kerb.

Examine the tyres regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tyre pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING WINTER TYRES

## CAUTION



Make sure that you use the correct wheel nuts for the type of wheel the winter tyres are fitted to.

If winter tyres are used, make sure that the tyre pressures are correct. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).

# Wheels and Tyres

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### WARNINGS

-  Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).
-  Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.
-  Only fit snow chains to specified tyres. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240).

### CAUTION

-  If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

**Note:** The ABS will continue to operate normally.

Only use small link snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

## Vehicles with stability control (ESP)

Vehicles with stability control (ESP) may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics which can be reduced by switching traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 155).

## TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### WARNINGS

-  The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to regularly check the tyre pressures.
-  The system will only provide a low tyre pressure warning. It will not inflate the tyres.

### WARNINGS

-  The system may take longer to detect low pressure in the tyres if you have fitted snow chains.
-  Do not drive on significantly under-inflated tyres. This may cause the tyres to overheat and fail. Under-inflation reduces fuel efficiency, tyre tread life and may also affect your ability to drive the vehicle safely.
-  Do not bend or damage the valves when you are inflating the tyres.
-  Have tyres installed by properly trained technicians.

**Note:** After changing the tyres or sensors the system will take a few minutes to reset. During this period the system is operational but a warning lamp may appear.

**Note:** If you fit tyres that do not have monitoring sensors, a message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 98). Confirm this message to deactivate the system.

The system monitors the pressure in the tyres using sensors located on the wheels and a receiver located in your vehicle. When the system detects low pressure in the tyres, a warning message is displayed in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 98).

If a low pressure warning message is displayed in the information display, check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240). If this happens frequently, have the cause determined and rectified as soon as possible.

# Wheels and Tyres

## Checking the tyre pressures

**Note:** If the tyre pressures are greater than or equal to 3.3 bar (48 lbf/in<sup>2</sup>), you will see the **+** symbol below the pressure value. The system only measures pressure up to 3.3 bar (48 lbf/in<sup>2</sup>). The **+** symbol indicates that the tyre pressures may be higher.

**Note:** Type 3 instrument clusters have a slightly different menu structure. Select **Settings** first to access **Information**.

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Information** with the up and down buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Tyre Pressures** with the up and down buttons and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.
5. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Hold the left arrow button pressed to return to the trip computer display.

## Setting the vehicle load

**Note:** Type 3 instrument clusters have a slightly different menu structure. Select **Settings** first to access **Setup**.

Correct tyre pressure settings depend on vehicle load. See **Technical Specifications** (page 240). The system can only detect low pressure if you have entered the current vehicle load.

1. Press the right arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Setup** with the up and down buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Tyre Pressures** with the up and down buttons and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight the desired setting and press the **OK** button to confirm the setting.
5. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Hold the left arrow button pressed to return to the trip computer display.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel nut torque

Wheel type	Nm (lb-ft)
All	140 (103)

# Wheels and Tyres

## Tyre pressures (cold tyres)

### Up to 80 km/h (50 mph)

Variant	Tyre size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )			
All	T125/90 R 16	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)
Spare wheel when it differs from the other fitted wheels	215/55 R 16	3 (44)	3 (44)	3 (44)	3 (44)

### Up to 160 km/h (100mph)

Variant	Tyre size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )			
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)	205/55 R 16*	2.2 (32)	2.2 (32)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma), 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (M14), 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel Stage V, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW)	215/55 R 16* 235/45 R18	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma), 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (M14), 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel Stage V, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW)	215/50 R 17	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)

## Wheels and Tyres

Variant	Tyre size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (lbf/ in <sup>2</sup> )			
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma), 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4), 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel Stage V, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW)	235/40 R 18	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.6 (38)	3.1 (45)
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma), 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4), 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel Stage V, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW)	235/40 R 19	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)
2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4) and 2.3L Duratec-HE (MI4)	215/55 R 16*	2.2 (32)	2.2 (32)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4) and 2.3L Duratec-HE (MI4)	215/50 R 17, 235/40 R 18, 235/45 R 18 and 235/40 R 19	2.2 (32)	2.2 (32)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)

\*Only fit snow chains to specified tyres.

## Wheels and Tyres

### Continuous speed in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph)

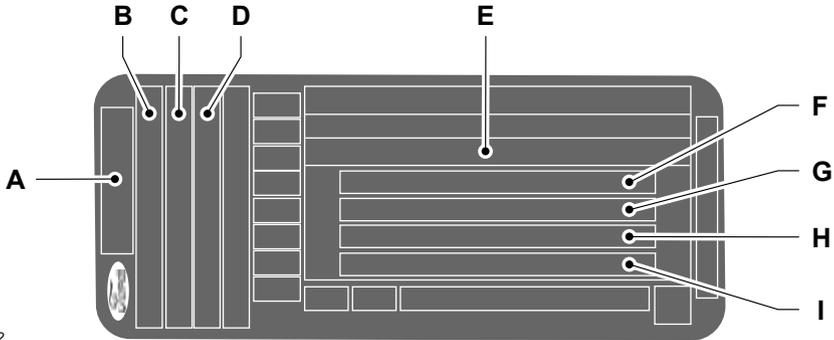
Variant	Tyre size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )			
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)	205/55 R 16	2.2 (32)	2.2 (32)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma), 2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4), 2.3L Duratec-HE (MI4) and 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel Stage V	215/55 R 16, 235/40 R 18, 235/45 R 18 and 235/40 R 19	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.6 (38)	3.1 (45)
1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma), 2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4), 2.3L Duratec-HE (MI4) and 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel Stage V	215/50 R 17	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)	3.1 (45)
2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4)	215/55 R 16, 235/40 R 18, 235/45 R 18 and 235/40 R 19	2.5 (36)	2.3 (33)	2.9 (42)	3.2 (46)
2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4)	215/50 R 17	2.5 (36)	2.4 (35)	2.9 (42)	3.2 (46)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW)	215/55 R 16, 235/40 R 18, 235/45 R 18 and 235/40 R 19	2.5 (36)	2.3 (33)	2.9 (42)	3.1 (45)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) and 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW)	215/50 R 17	2.5 (36)	2.4 (35)	2.9 (42)	3.1 (45)

# Vehicle identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** The vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

**Note:** The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependant upon market requirements.



E135662

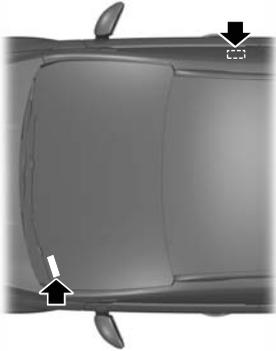
- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Emission level
- E Vehicle identification number
- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

The vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate located on the lock side of the right-hand door aperture at the bottom.

# Vehicle identification

---

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

# Capacities and Specifications

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Vehicle dimensions

#### 4-door

<b>Dimension description</b>	<b>Dimension in mm (inches)</b>
Maximum length - without bumper styling kit	4850 (190.9)
Maximum length - with bumper styling kit	4866 (191.6)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2092 (82.4)
Overall height - EC kerb weight	1460 - 1500 (57.5 - 59.1)
Wheelbase	2850 (112.2)
Front track	1579 - 1589 (62.2 - 62.6)
Rear track	1595 - 1605 (62.8 - 63.2)

#### 5-door

<b>Dimension description</b>	<b>Dimension in mm (inches)</b>
Maximum length - without bumper styling kit	4784 (188.3)
Maximum length - with bumper styling kit	4800 (189)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2092 (82.4)
Overall height - EC kerb weight	1460 - 1500 (57.5 - 59.1)
Wheelbase	2850 (112.2)
Front track	1579 - 1589 (62.2 - 62.6)
Rear track	1595 - 1605 (62.8 - 63.2)

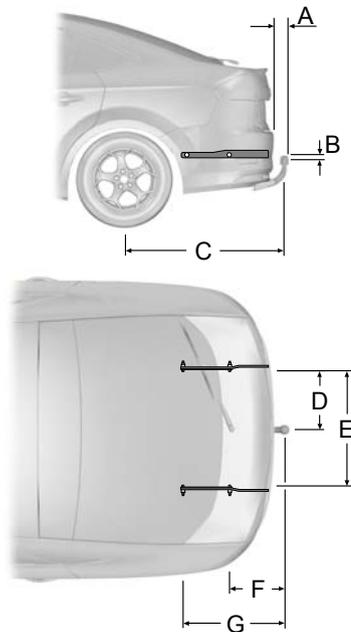
#### Estate

<b>Dimension description</b>	<b>Dimension in mm (inches)</b>
Maximum length - without bumper styling kit	4837 (190.4)
Maximum length - with bumper styling kit	4858 (191.3)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2092 (82.4)

# Capacities and Specifications

Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
Overall height - EC kerb weight without roof bars	1472 - 1512 (58 - 59.5)
Overall height - EC kerb weight including roof bars	1508 - 1548 (59.4 - 61)
Wheelbase	2850 (112.2)
Front track	1579 - 1589 (62.2 - 62.6)
Rear track	1595 - 1605 (62.8 - 63.2)

## Towing equipment dimensions



E87092

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### 4-door

Item	Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball	102 (4)
B	Attachment point – centre of tow ball	1 (0.04)
C	Wheel centre – centre of tow ball	1150 (45.3)
D	Centre of tow ball – side member	438 (17.2)
E	Inner side of side member	876 (34.5)
F	Centre of tow ball – centre 1. attachment point	434 (17.1)
G	Centre of tow ball – centre 2. attachment point	707 (27.8)

### 5-door

Item	Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball	100 (3.9)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball (with sport bumper)	98 (3.9)
B	Attachment point – centre of tow ball	1 (0.04)
C	Wheel centre – centre of tow ball	1080 (42.5)
D	Centre of tow ball – side member	438 (17.2)
E	Inner side of side member	876 (34.5)
F	Centre of tow ball – centre 1. attachment point	364 (14.3)
G	Centre of tow ball – centre 2. attachment point	637 (25.1)

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### Estate

Item	Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball (without bumper styling kit)	100 (3.9)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball (with bumper styling kit)	95 (3.7)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball (without bumper styling kit, with self levelling suspension)	113 (4.4)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball (with bumper styling kit, with self levelling suspension)	108 (4.3)
B	Attachment point – centre of tow ball	1 (0.04)
C	Wheel centre – centre of tow ball	1135 - 1140 (44.7 - 44.9)
D	Centre of tow ball – side member	438 (17.2)
E	Inner side of side member	876 (34.5)
F	Centre of tow ball – centre 1. attachment point	419 - 429 (16.5 - 16.9)
G	Centre of tow ball – centre 2. attachment point	692 - 702 (27.2 - 27.6)

# Audio introduction

## IMPORTANT AUDIO INFORMATION

### WARNINGS

 Due to technical incompatibility, recordable (CD-R) and rewritable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.

 These units will play compact discs that conform to the International Red Book standard audio specification. Copy protected CDs from some manufacturers do not conform to this standard and playback cannot be guaranteed.

 Dual format, dual sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format), adopted by the music industry, are thicker than normal CDs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed, and jamming could occur. Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.

 All units except Sony CD (but not the 6CD) are designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm audio compact discs only. The Sony CD unit will play 8 cm discs with a Sony approved adaptor fitted (CSA-8).

 The audio unit may be damaged if unsuitable items like credit cards or coins are pushed inside the CD aperture.

### Audio unit labels

CLASS 1  
LASER PRODUCT

CAUTION—INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN  
DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR  
VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

### Disc labels

#### Audio CD

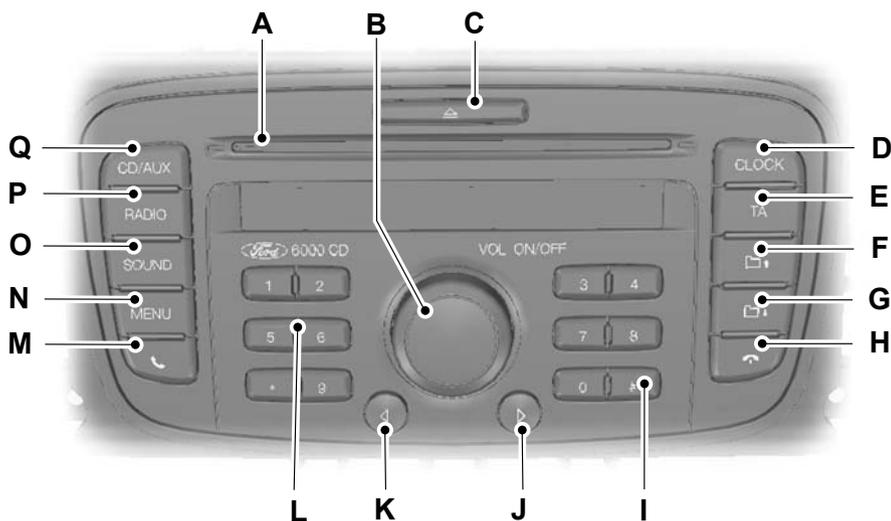


#### MP3



# Audio unit overview

## 6000CD



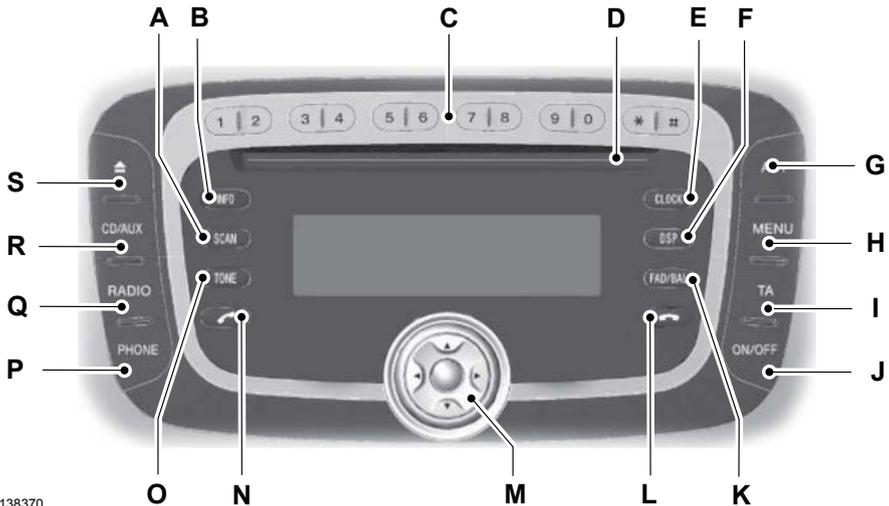
E141803

- A CD aperture. See **Loading compact discs** (page 265).
- B On, off and volume control. See **On/off control** (page 256).
- C CD eject. See **Ejecting compact discs** (page 267).
- D Clock. See **Setting the clock and date on the audio unit** (page 255).
- E Traffic announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 259).
- F Folder up.
- G Folder down.
- H End call. See **Telephone** (page 272).
- I Information. See **MP3 display options** (page 269).
- J Seek up. See **Station tuning control** (page 260).
- K Seek down. See **Station tuning control** (page 260).
- L Station presets. See **Station preset buttons** (page 258).
- M Accept call. See **Telephone** (page 272).
- N Menu. See **Audio menu control** (page 256).

# Audio unit overview

- O Bass and treble control. See **Bass/treble control** (page 256). Balance and fade control. See **Balance/fade control** (page 256).
- P Radio and waveband select. See **Waveband button** (page 258).
- Q Auxiliary and CD select. See **Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket** (page 270). See **Compact Disc Player** (page 265).

## Sony CD and Sony CD DAB



E138370

- A Scan. See **Station tuning control** (page 260). See **Compact disc track scanning** (page 267).
- B Information. See **MP3 display options** (page 269).
- C Station presets. See **Station preset buttons** (page 258).
- D CD aperture. See **Loading compact discs** (page 265).
- E Clock. See **Setting the clock and date on the audio unit** (page 255).
- F DSP select. See **Digital signal processing (DSP)** (page 262).
- G Autostore. See **Autostore control** (page 258).
- H Menu. See **Audio menu control** (page 256).
- I Traffic announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 259).
- J On and off control. See **On/off control** (page 256).

## Audio unit overview

---

- K Balance and fade control. See **Balance/fade control** (page 256).
- L End call. See **Telephone** (page 272).
- M Volume control, navigation buttons and select button.
- N Accept call. See **Telephone** (page 272).
- O Tone. See **Bass/treble control** (page 256).
- P Phone menu. See **Telephone** (page 272).
- Q Radio and waveband select. See **Waveband button** (page 258).
- R Auxiliary and CD select. See **Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket** (page 270). See **Compact Disc Player** (page 265).
- S CD eject. See **Ejecting compact discs** (page 267).

# Audio System Security

---

## SECURITY CODE

Each unit incorporates a unique code that must be entered before the unit will operate.

If the battery is disconnected or if the unit has been removed from the vehicle, the code must be re-entered before the unit will operate.

## LOST SECURITY CODE

If you lose the unique code, contact your dealer and supply details of your audio unit along with some proof of identity.

## ENTERING A SECURITY CODE

If **CODE ----**, **CODE 0000** or **ENTER KEYCODE** appears in the display when you switch on the audio unit, you must enter the unique code using the station preset buttons.

### 6000CD, Sony and Sony DAB

1. Using the station preset buttons enter the unique code.
2. If you make a mistake entering the code, re-enter the digits by continuing to select buttons 0-9. The display will advance from digit position 1 to 4 and then back again.
3. Make sure that the complete code is correct before pressing either the **\*** preset button or the button between the navigation buttons to confirm your selection.

## INCORRECT SECURITY CODE

Up to a maximum of 10 unique code entry attempts are allowed with various consequences if you get it wrong.

The number of attempts will be shown in the display.

If the display reverts to **CODE** another entry attempt may be made immediately.

If the display shows **WAIT 30**, the unit will be locked for 30 minutes. Wait until the timer counts down to zero. When **CODE** is shown in the display, enter the correct code.

**Note:** *After 10 incorrect attempts the unit will be permanently inoperative and **LOCKED** will be shown in the display. See your dealer.*

# Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays

---

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE ON THE AUDIO UNIT

### 6000CD

#### Changing the date and time

Press the **CLOCK** button to display the date and time.

**Note:** *If you do not press another button within 30 seconds of pressing the **CLOCK** button, the display will return to its previous setting.*

1. Using the seek up or seek down button select the date or time value that you wish to change. The selected value will flash in the display.
2. Rotate the volume control to change the selected date or time value.
3. Using the seek up or seek down button select additional date or time values that you wish to change.
4. Rotate the volume control to change the selected date or time value.
5. Press the **CLOCK** button to exit and save your settings.

**Note:** *If you do not press the **CLOCK** button within 30 seconds of changing a date or time value, the display will exit and save the new values automatically.*

**Note:** *Press and hold the **CLOCK** button for more than two seconds to automatically select the hour value for winter or summer time adjustment.*

#### 12/24 hour format

1. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until the 12/24 icon is shown in the display.
2. Using the seek up or seek down button select your required setting.
3. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.

## Sony and Sony DAB

### Changing the date and time

1. Press the **CLOCK** button.
2. Press the left or right navigation button until the date or time value that you wish to change flashes in the display.
3. Using the up or down navigation button change the selected date or time value.
4. Using the left and right navigation buttons select additional date or time values that you wish to change. The selected value will flash in the display.
5. Repeat steps three and four as necessary.
6. Press the **CLOCK** button or the button between the navigation buttons to exit and save your settings.

### 12/24 hour format

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Press the up or down navigation button until the 12/24 icon is shown in the display.
3. Using the left or right navigation button select the required setting.
4. Press the **MENU** button or the button between the navigation buttons to confirm your selection.

# Audio unit operation

---

## ON/OFF CONTROL

Press the on/off control. This will also operate the unit for up to one hour with the ignition turned off.

The radio will switch off automatically after one hour.

## BASS/TREBLE CONTROL

The bass function is used to adjust the low-frequency response of the audio unit.

The middle function is used to adjust the mid-frequency response of the audio unit.

The treble function is used to adjust the high-frequency response of the audio unit.

## 6000CD

**Note:** *The selected level will be shown in the display.*

1. Press the **SOUND** button once for bass, twice for middle or three times for treble.
2. Use the volume control or on some units the seek up or seek down button to make the necessary adjustment.

## Sony and Sony DAB

**Note:** *You can adjust these settings separately for CD, Radio and Aux.*

**Note:** *The selected level will be shown in the display.*

1. Press the **TONE** button once for bass, twice for middle or three times for treble.
2. Use the up and down navigation buttons to make the necessary adjustment.

## BALANCE/FADE CONTROL

The balance function is used to adjust the sound distribution between the left and right speakers.

The fade function is used to adjust the sound distribution from front to rear in vehicles fitted with rear speakers.

## 6000CD

Press the **SOUND** button four times for balance or five times for fade.

Use the volume control or on some units the seek up or seek down button to make the necessary adjustment.

## Sony and Sony DAB

Press the **FAD/BAL** button once for fade or twice for balance.

Use the up and down navigation buttons for fade adjustment, and the left and right navigation buttons for balance adjustment.

The selected level will be shown in the display.

## AUDIO MENU CONTROL

Use the **MENU** button to access functions that cannot be selected directly via one of the control buttons. Press the **MENU** button for first level functions, or press and hold the **MENU** button for other second level functions (not available on Sony or Sony DAB audio units).

# Audio unit operation

## 6000CD

Menu functions			
First level			Second level
During radio reception	During tape playback	During CD playback	During all functions
Manual tuning	12/24 hour	Scan	Traffic local or distant
Scan tuning	AVC*	Shuffle	AF**
12/24 hour	ADV menu	Repeat	REG
AVC*	-	Comp	News
ADV menu	-	12/24 hour	CLIP
-	-	AVC*	VID
-	-	ADV menu	Bluetooth enable/disable

**Note:** The sequence in which functions appear may vary for different audio units and vehicles.

**Note:** Second level functions (advanced) can also be entered by selecting ADV menu from the first level menu.

\*Automatic volume control.

\*\* Alternative frequencies.

## Sony CD and Sony CD DAB

Menu functions	
During radio reception	During CD playback
12/24 hour	12/24 hour
CLIP ON/OFF	CLIP ON/OFF
News ON/OFF	News ON/OFF
AVC <sup>1</sup>	AVC <sup>1</sup>
AF <sup>2</sup>	AF <sup>2</sup>

# Audio unit operation

Menu functions	
During radio reception	During CD playback
TA <sup>3</sup> volume	TA <sup>3</sup> volume
Traffic local or distant	Traffic local or distant
Regional ON/OFF	Shuffle
-	Repeat
-	Comp ON/OFF

**Note:** The sequence in which functions appear may vary for different audio units and vehicles.

<sup>1</sup>Automatic volume control.

<sup>2</sup>Alternative frequencies.

<sup>3</sup>Traffic announcement.

## Sony CD and Sony CD DAB with Bluetooth

Pressing **PHONE** followed by the **MENU** button will access the following options:

- No active phone or Active phone
- Debond BT device
- Reject calls ON/OFF
- Bluetooth ON/OFF.

## STATION PRESET BUTTONS

This feature allows you to store your favourite stations so that they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. The audio unit will mute. When sound returns the station has been stored.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** When you drive to another part of the country, FM RDS (Radio Data System) stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies are stored on the preset buttons.

## WAVEBAND BUTTON

**Note:** The selector can also be used to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

## AUTOSTORE CONTROL

**Note:** This function will overwrite the previously stored autostore preset stations.

**Note:** This function can also be used to store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

**Note:** The strongest signals available on the selected waveband will be stored.

# Audio unit operation

---

The sound is muted and AUTOSTORE will be shown in the display while the unit searches through the frequencies.

When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

## 6000CD

Press and hold the **RADIO** button.

## Sony CD

Press and hold the **AST** or **RADIO** button.

## TRAFFIC INFORMATION CONTROL

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic programme information.

### Activating traffic announcements

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press the **TA** button. Either TA-D or TA-L will be shown in the display to indicate that the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, TP will also be shown in the display. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic programme and display TP SEEK while doing so. If it cannot locate such a station, NOT FOUND will be shown in the display.

TP will be shown within a box in the display when you are tuned to a station providing traffic information from a linked RDS (radio data system) or EON (enhanced other network) station.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio, tape or CD playback and TRAFFIC or NEWS will be shown in the display.

If the traffic signal weakens, TP will flash in the display. Press the seek up or seek down button (the left or right navigation button on Sony or Sony DAB audio units) to find another station.

**Note:** *If this happens during CD or AUX playback or, on certain models, with the radio volume set to zero, the unit will retune automatically if the station is not available.*

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If TA is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non TA station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

### Local or distant traffic

The number of RDS or EON traffic announcements may become excessive in some areas so there is an option to select between local traffic information and all available information.

## 6000CD

1. Press and hold the **MENU** button until the display changes.
2. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until TA is shown in the display.
3. Press the seek up or seek down button to select either local (TA LOCAL) or distant (TA DIST) traffic announcements.
4. Press the **MENU** button or allow the menu to time out to confirm your selection.

**Note:** *Either TA-L or TA-D will be shown in the display.*

# Audio unit operation

---

## Sony CD

1. Press the **MENU** button and use the up or down navigation button to select the TA display.
2. Press the left or right navigation button to select your required setting.
3. Press the **MENU** button to confirm your selection.

## Traffic announcement volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

## To adjust the preset volume

### 6000CD

1. Press and hold the **TA** button.
2. Rotate the volume control to make the necessary adjustment.

**Note:** *The selected level will be shown in the display.*

## Sony CD

1. Press and hold the **TA** button.
2. Press the left or right navigation button to make the necessary adjustment.

**Note:** *The selected level will be shown in the display.*

## Ending traffic announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** during the announcement.

**Note:** *If you press TA at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

## STATION TUNING CONTROL

### DAB service linking

**Note:** *The DAB service linking is as per default off.*

**Note:** *Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.*

**Note:** *The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.*

### Switching DAB service linking on and off

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Using the up or down navigation button scroll through the display until DIGITAL RADIO SERVICE LINK is shown in the display.
3. Using the left or right navigation button select AUTO or OFF.
4. Press the **MENU** button or the button between the navigation buttons to confirm your selection.

### Seek tuning

#### 6000CD

Select a waveband and briefly press the seek up or seek down button. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

#### Sony CD

Select a waveband and briefly press the up or down navigation button. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

# Audio unit operation

---

## Manual tuning

### 6000CD

1. Select a waveband and press the **MENU** button until MAN is shown in the display.
2. Press the seek up or seek down button to tune up or down the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.

### Sony CD

Select a waveband and briefly press the up or down navigation button to tune up or down the waveband in small increments. The display shows the frequency selected.

### Sony DAB

**Note:** *Ensembles are groups of stations.*

Briefly press the up or down navigation button to move up or down the ensembles.

## Scan tuning

The **SCAN** function allows you to listen to 10 seconds of each station detected.

### 6000CD

1. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until SCAN is shown in the display.
2. Press the seek up or seek down button to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Depending on the audio unit, press the seek up or seek down button or the **MENU** button to continue listening to a station.

## Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **SCAN** button. SCAN flashes or SCANNING is shown in the display.
2. Press the left or right navigation button to scan within a waveband.
3. Press **SCAN** again to continue listening to a station.

# Audio unit menus

---

## AUTOMATIC VOLUME CONTROL

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until AVC is shown in the display.
2. Use the seek up or seek down button to adjust the AVC setting.
3. Press the **MENU** button or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.

### Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button briefly.
2. Using the up or down navigation button select AVC.
3. Press the **MENU** button or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.

## DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING (DSP)

### DSP occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in the vehicle to each seat. Select the sitting position for which the audio is to be correctly enhanced.

### DSP equaliser

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

## Changing the DSP settings

1. Press the **DSP** button once for occupancy and twice for equaliser. For item location: See **Audio unit overview** (page 251).
2. Use the up and down navigation buttons to select the required setting.
3. Press the button between the navigation buttons to confirm your selection.

## AUDIO DISTORTION REDUCTION (CLIP)

When available CLIP automatically detects sound distortion and reduces the volume level until the distortion has been eliminated. This means that whilst the display might change numerically when you raise the volume manually with the control, there may be no actual increase in sound.

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press and hold the **MENU** button until the display changes.
2. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until CLIP is shown in the display.
3. Using the seek up or seek down button turn the function on or off.
4. Press the **MENU** button or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.

### Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button briefly.
2. Using the up or down navigation button select CLIP.
3. Press the **MENU** button or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.

# Audio unit menus

---

## ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCIES

Many programmes broadcast on the FM waveband have a programme identification (PI) code, which can be recognised by audio units.

If your radio has alternative frequencies (AF) tuning switched on and you move from one transmission area to another, this function will search for and switch to a stronger station signal, if one can be found.

Under certain conditions, however, AF tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and, if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or, if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency. On certain units, NOT FOUND will be shown in the display.

With AF-MAN selected, the unit operates in a similar way to AF-AUTO or AF-ON, but only searches for an alternative frequency when prompted by pressing a preset button.

With AF-OFF selected, the original stored frequency remains selected. In this mode, AF-OFF will be displayed every time the unit is turned on.

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press and hold the **MENU** button until the display changes.
2. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until AF is shown in the display.

3. Using the seek up or seek down button select the required setting.
4. Press the **MENU** button or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.

### Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button briefly.
2. Using the left or right navigation button select the required setting.
3. Press the **MENU** button to confirm your selection.

## REGIONAL MODE (REG)

Regional mode (REG) controls the behaviour of AF switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centred on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents 'random' AF switches when neighbouring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighbouring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause 'random' AF switches if they are not.

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press and hold the **MENU** button until the display changes.
2. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until REG is shown in the display.

## Audio unit menus

---

3. Using the seek up or seek down button turn the function on or off.
4. Press the **MENU** button or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.
3. Press the button between the navigation buttons to make your selection.
4. Using the left or right navigation button turn the function on or off.
5. Press the **MENU** button or the button between the navigation buttons to confirm your selection.

### Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button briefly.
2. Using the up or down navigation button select REGIONAL.
3. Press the **MENU** button or allow the system to time out to confirm your selection.

### NEWS BROADCASTS

Some audio units interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or radio data system (RDS) and enhanced other network (EON) linked stations, in the same way as traffic information is provided.

During news broadcasts, the display alternates between the station name and NEWS. News interrupts are broadcast at the same preset volume level as traffic announcements.

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press and hold the **MENU** button until NEWS is shown in the display.
2. Using the seek up or seek down button turn the function on or off.
3. Press the **MENU** button to confirm your selection.

### Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Using the up or down navigation button scroll through the display until NEWS is shown in the display.

# Compact Disc Player

## LOADING COMPACT DISCS

### 6000CD, Sony and Sony DAB

Always check that the CD aperture is empty before inserting a CD.

Insert a CD, label side up, into the audio unit.

**LOADING, READING CD** and **AUDIO CD** or **MP3 CD** will be shown in the display, and playback will start automatically.

## TRACK SELECTION

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **SEEK UP** button once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
2. Press the **SEEK DOWN** button once to replay the current track. If pressed within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track will be selected.
3. Press the **SEEK DOWN** button repeatedly to select previous tracks.

### Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the up navigation button once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
2. Press the down navigation button once to replay the current track. If pressed within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track will be selected.
3. Press the down navigation button repeatedly to select previous tracks.

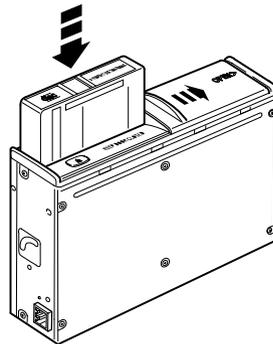
## LOADING THE COMPACT DISC CHANGER

### CAUTIONS

- ! Do not insert more than one disc into each slot.
- ! Keep the door closed when the magazine is installed.

**Note:** *The unit will only accept conventional CD's.*

For item location: See **CD changer** (page 131).



1. Open the door.
2. Press the button.
3. Remove the magazine.
4. Insert a disc, with the label facing upwards, into each slot. You will hear a distinct click to confirm correct loading.
5. Install the magazine in the direction indicated by the arrow on the magazine. You will hear a distinct click to confirm correct loading.
6. Close the door.

# Compact Disc Player

## UNLOADING THE COMPACT DISC CHANGER

### CAUTION

 Keep the door closed when the magazine is installed.

1. Open the door.
2. Press the button.
3. Remove the magazine.
4. Pull the tray out using the lever on the side.
5. Remove the CD and close the tray.
6. Repeat steps four and five to remove remaining CD's.
7. Install the magazine in the direction indicated by the arrow on the magazine. You will hear a distinct click to confirm correct loading.
8. Close the door.

## COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

**Note:** During playback, the display indicates the disc, track and time that has elapsed since the start of the track.

**Note:** On CD changer audio units, if two or more CD's are loaded one after the other, playback will start with the last CD loaded.

During radio reception, press the **CD/AUX** button once to start CD playback.

Playback will start immediately after a disc is loaded.

### Compact disc changer playback

Press the **CD/AUX** button twice to start CD playback.

**Note:** If the **CD/AUX** button is pressed when no discs are loaded, NO CDS will be shown in the display.

## FAST FORWARD/REVERSE

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

Press and hold the seek up or the seek down button to search forwards or backwards within the tracks on the disc.

### Sony and Sony DAB

Press and hold the left or right navigation button to search forwards or backwards within the tracks on the disc.

## SHUFFLE/RANDOM

Random track playback, also known as shuffle, plays all tracks on a CD in random order.

### 6000CD

**Note:** When *SHUFF CD* is selected only the tracks on the current CD will be shuffled. When *SHUF ALL* is selected the tracks on all the CD's will be shuffled.

1. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until SHUF is shown in the display.
2. Using the seek up or seek down button scroll through the display until SHUF ALL or SHUFF CD is shown in the display.
3. Using the seek up or seek down button select the next track to shuffle if required.

**Note:** With the function on, *SHUFFLE* will be shown in the display as each new track is selected.

# Compact Disc Player

---

## Sony CD and Sony CD DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Using the up or down navigation button scroll through the display until SHUFFLE is shown in the display.
3. Use the left or right navigation button to switch the function on and off.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFF CD for the whole CD, or SHUF ALL to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order.

## COMPACT DISC TRACK COMPRESSION

With this feature on, quieter music is boosted and louder music lowered to minimise repeated volume adjustments.

### All except Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press **MENU** repeatedly until COMP is shown in the display.
2. Using the seek up or seek down button turn the function on or off.
3. Press the **MENU** button to confirm your selection.

### Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Using the up or down navigation button scroll through the display until COMP is shown in the display.
3. Press the button between the navigation buttons to make your selection.
4. Using the left or right navigation button turn the function on or off.
5. Press the **MENU** button or the button between the navigation buttons to confirm your selection.

## COMPACT DISC TRACK SCANNING

The SCAN function allows you to preview each track for approximately 10 seconds.

### 6000CD

**Note:** When selected, **SCAN** will be shown briefly in the display at the start of each track.

1. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until **SCAN** is shown in the display.
2. Using the seek up or seek down button select either **SCAN CD** or **SCAN ALL**.
3. Press the seek up or seek down button again to continue listening to a track.

### Sony and Sony DAB

**Note:** Various scan modes are possible, according to the type of CD currently playing.

1. Press the **SCAN** button once to scan each track on an audio CD, or the first 10 seconds of each track on each folder of a MP3 CD.
2. Press the **SCAN** button again to select **SCAN OFF** (audio CD), or in the case of MP3 to scan each track within a folder.

## EJECTING COMPACT DISCS

**Note:** Radio reception is restored automatically when the **EJECT** button is pressed.

**Note:** If the **EJECT** button is pressed in error, press the button again to cancel.

**Note:** If the CD is not removed it will be pulled back into the audio unit.

# Compact Disc Player

---

## 6000CD

Press the **EJECT** button at any time and remove the CD.

## Sony CD

**Note:** *If no CD is loaded when the **EJECT** button is pressed, **NO CD** will be shown in the display.*

Press the **EJECT** button at any time and remove the CD. **EJECTING** and **PLEASE REMOVE** will be shown in the display.

## REPEAT COMPACT DISC TRACKS

### 6000CD

1. Press the **MENU** button repeatedly until **REPEAT** is shown in the display.
2. Using the **SEEK UP** or **SEEK DOWN** button choose between **OFF** and **TRK**.

## Sony and Sony DAB

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. using the up or down navigation buttons scroll through the display until **REPEAT** is shown in the display.
3. Using the left or right navigation buttons select **REPEAT TRACK** or **REPEAT OFF**.
4. Press the **MENU** button to confirm your selection.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, playback options are **REPEAT TRACK**, **REP FOLDER** and **REPEAT OFF**.*

## MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

**Note:** *Some copy protected audio files may not be read by the CD player.*

The CD player also supports MP3 and WMA format audio files.

When a CD containing audio is inserted into the CD player the disc's directory structure is read in. It may take a while before playback starts and is dependant on the quality of the disc.

MP3 tracks may be recorded on the CD in several ways. They can all be placed in the root directory like a conventional audio CD, or they can be placed in folders that may represent, for example, an album, an artist, or a genre.

### 6000CD

Press the **FOLDER UP** button to select the next music folder on the MP3 disc.

Press the **FOLDER DOWN** button to select the previous music folder on the MP3 disc.

## Sony and Sony DAB

Use the up and down navigation buttons to select the next or previous music folder on the MP3 disc.

## Playing a multi session disc

The normal playing sequence on CD's with multiple folders is to play the tracks in the first folder, then the tracks in any folders nested inside the first folder, then move onto the second folder, and so on. For example, if folder 1 has folders 1a and 1b within it, and folder 2 contains folder 2a, the playing sequence will be folder 1, 1a, 1b, 2, 2a.

When the playback of a file is finished the playback of the other files in the same directory continues. Directory change takes place automatically when all files in the current directory have been played back.

# Compact Disc Player

---

## MP3 DISPLAY OPTIONS

When an MP3 disc is playing, certain information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The file name
- The folder name
- ID3 information which might be the album or artist's name.

The unit will normally show the file name that is playing. To select one of the other items of information, press the **INFO** button repeatedly until the required item is shown in the display.

**Note:** *If the ID3 information selected is unavailable, **NO MP3 TAG** will be shown in the display.*

## CD text display options

When an audio disc with CD text is playing, limited information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The disc name
- The artist name
- The track name.

**Note:** *These display options are selected in the same way as MP3 displays. **NO DISC NAME** or **NO TRACK NAME** will be shown in the display if no information has been encoded.*

## ENDING COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

Press the **RADIO** button.

**Note:** *This will not eject the CD; the disc will merely pause at the point where radio reception was restored.*

To resume CD playback, press the **CD/AUX** button again.

## Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket

---

**Note:** *For optimum performance when using any auxiliary device set the volume on the device high. This will reduce audio interference when charging the device via the vehicle power supply socket.*

When fitted the Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket permits an auxiliary device, such as an MP3 player, to be linked into the vehicle audio system. Output can be played through the vehicle speakers.

To connect an auxiliary device, plug it into the AUX IN socket using a 3.5 mm conventional audio jack connector.

Select the auxiliary input via the **CD/AUX** button and playback will be heard through the vehicle speakers. AUX will be shown in the display. Volume, treble and bass can be adjusted on the audio unit as normal.

The audio unit buttons can also be used to restore playback from the audio unit, while the auxiliary device remains connected.

# Audio Troubleshooting

## AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Audio unit display	Rectification
CD ERROR PLEASE CHECK CD CDC ERROR	General error message for CD fault conditions, for example cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted. May also indicate a audio unit malfunction. Make sure that the disc is correctly loaded, clean and re- load the CD or replace the CD with a known music CD. See <b>Ejecting compact discs</b> (page 267). See <b>Loading compact discs</b> (page 265). If error continues. See your dealer.
NO CD NO CDS NO CD #	Message to indicate that the audio unit or CD changer is empty. Insert a CD. See <b>Loading compact discs</b> (page 265).
HIGH TEMP CD DRIVE HIGH TEMP	Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.
SLOT FULL	Message to indicate that the CD slot is already loaded. Eject the CD from selected slot before attempting load operation or select another slot location. See <b>Loading compact discs</b> (page 265).
CDC FULL	Message to indicate that the audio unit is full. See <b>Ejecting compact discs</b> (page 267).
DATA CD	An incompatible CD has been inserted, for example not an audio CD. See <b>Ejecting compact discs</b> (page 267).
CODE ----	Message to prompt you for the Keycode. See <b>Entering a security code</b> (page 254).
WAIT	Message to inform you to wait until the next keycode entry attempt can be made. See <b>Incorrect security code</b> (page 254).
TRIES	Message indicates the number of incorrect input attempts. See <b>Incorrect security code</b> (page 254).
LOCKED	Message to inform you that audio unit security system has locked the unit after repeated incorrect keycode entries. See your dealer.
KEYCODE.... ENTER KEYCODE....	Message to prompt you for the Keycode. See <b>Entering a security code</b> (page 254).
INCORRECT	Message to inform you that the entered keycode is incorrect. See <b>Incorrect security code</b> (page 254).

# Telephone

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### CAUTION

 Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.

This section describes the functions and features of the Bluetooth mobile phone hands free system.

The Bluetooth mobile phone part of the system provides interaction with the audio or navigation system and your mobile phone. It allows you to use the audio or navigation system to make and receive calls without having to hold your mobile phone.

## Compatibility of phones

### CAUTION

 As no common agreement exists, mobile phone manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the phone and hands-free system, which in some cases may significantly degrade the system performance. To avoid this situation, only recommended phones should be used.

Please visit the website [www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com](http://www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com) for full details.

## TELEPHONE SETUP

### Phonebook

After start up access to the phonebook list can be delayed for several minutes, depending upon the size.

## Phonebook categories

Depending on your phonebook entry, different categories can be displayed in the audio unit.

For example:

M	Mobile
O	Office
H	Home
F	Fax

**Note:** *Entries may be displayed without a category attachment.*

The category can also be indicated as an icon:



Phone



Mobile



Home



Office



Fax

## Making a phone an active phone

When using the system for the first time, no phone is connected to the system.

### Bluetooth phone

After bonding a Bluetooth phone to the system, this becomes the active phone. For further information refer to the phone menu.

# Telephone

Select the phone from the active phone menu.

Turning the ignition and radio or navigation unit back on again, the last active phone is picked up by the system.

**Note:** *In some cases the Bluetooth connection must also be confirmed on the phone.*

## Bond another Bluetooth phone

Bond a new Bluetooth phone as described in the requirements for a Bluetooth connection.

Phones stored in the system are accessible by using the phone list on the audio unit.

**Note:** *A maximum of six devices may be bonded. If six Bluetooth devices have already been bonded, one of these has to be debonded in order to bond a new device.*

## BLUETOOTH SETUP

Before you can use your telephone with your vehicle it must be bonded to the vehicle telephone system.

### Handling of phones

Up to six Bluetooth devices can be bonded to the vehicle system.

**Note:** *If there is an ongoing call when the phone in use is selected as the new active phone, the call is transferred to the vehicle audio system.*

**Note:** *Even if connected to the car system, your phone can still be used in the usual way.*

## Requirements for Bluetooth connection

The following are required before a Bluetooth phone connection can be made.

1. The Bluetooth feature must be activated on the phone and on the audio unit. Make sure the Bluetooth menu option in the audio unit is set to **ON**. For information on phone settings, refer to your phone user guide.
2. In the Bluetooth menu on your phone, search for **Ford Audio** and select it.
3. Enter the code number shown on the vehicle display using the phone keypad. If no code number is shown on the display, enter the Bluetooth PIN number 0000 using the phone keypad. Now enter the Bluetooth PIN number shown on the vehicle display.
4. If your mobile phone asks you to authorize the automatic connection, select **YES**.

**Note:** *A phone call will be disconnected if the audio unit is switched off. If the ignition key is turned to the off position the phone call will remain in progress.*

## TELEPHONE CONTROLS

### Remote control

#### Voice, accept and reject button



- 1 Voice button
- 2 Accept and reject button

The VOICE button is used to activate or switch off the Voice control.

# Telephone

---

On vehicles with an accept and reject button, phone calls can be accepted and rejected by pressing the appropriate button.

**Note:** *Some audio units have the accept and reject buttons on the front bezel. These operate in the same way.*

## USING THE TELEPHONE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: NAVIGATION SYSTEM

This chapter describes the phone functions of the audio unit.

**Note:** *Refer to your audio guide for details of the controls.*

An active phone must be present.

Even if connected to the audio unit, your phone can still be used in the usual way.

**Note:** *You can exit the phone menu by pressing any source button **CD**, **AM/FM** or **AUX**.*

### Making a call

#### Dialling a number using voice control

Phone numbers can be dialled using voice control. See **Telephone commands** (page 289).

#### Dialling a number using the address book

You can access your phone address book via Bluetooth. The entries will appear in the unit display.

1. Press the **PHONE** or the call accept button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Keep pressing the **MENU** button until **PHONEBOOK** appears.
4. Press the seek buttons to select the desired phone number.

**Note:** *Press and hold the seek button to skip to the next letter in the alphabet.*

5. Press the **PHONE** or the call accept button to dial the selected phone number.

#### Dialling a number using the address book - Sony radio

You can access your phone address book via Bluetooth. The entries will appear in the unit display.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the seek button until the phone book is shown.
3. Press the up/down arrow buttons to select the desired phone number.

**Note:** *Press and hold the up/down arrow buttons to skip to the next letter in the alphabet.*

4. Press the **PHONE** or the call accept button to dial the selected phone number.

#### Dialling a number using the telephone keypad

If you have an audio unit with a telephone keypad (buttons 0-9, \* and #):

1. Press the call accept button. Press the **PHONE** button if you have a Sony radio.
2. Dial the number using the telephone keypad on the audio unit.
3. Press the call accept button.

**Note:** *If you enter an incorrect digit whilst entering a phone number, press the seek left button to erase the last digit. A long press will erase the complete string of digits.*

*Press and hold **0** to enter a + digit.*

#### Ending a call

Calls can be ended by pressing the call reject button.

# Telephone

---

Audio units without a telephone keypad can also end a call by pressing either **PHONE**, **CD**, **AM/FM** or **ON/OFF**, or by pressing the **MODE** button on the remote control

## Redialling a number

1. Press the **PHONE** or the call accept button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Select the **CALL OUT** list or the **CALL IN** list. On some audio units, select the **MISSED**, **INCOMING** or **OUTGOING** calls list.

**Note:** *If the active phone does not provide a call out list, the last outgoing call number/entry can be redialled.*

4. Press the seek button on the audio unit.
5. Press the **PHONE** or the call accept button to dial the desired phone number.

## Redialling a number - Sony radio

1. Press the **PHONE** or the call accept button.
2. Press the seek button until the desired list is displayed.

**Note:** *If the active phone does not provide a call out list, the last outgoing call number/entry can be redialled.*

3. Press the up/down buttons to select the desired phone number.
4. Press the **PHONE** or the call accept button to dial the phone number.

## Redialling the last dialled number - Sony radio

1. Press the call accept button.
2. Press the call accept button a second time to dial the number.

## Receiving an incoming call

### Accepting an incoming call

Incoming calls can be accepted by pressing either the call accept button, the **PHONE** button or the **MODE** button on the remote control.

### Rejecting an incoming call

Incoming calls can be rejected by pressing the call reject button.

Audio units without a telephone keypad can also reject a call by pressing either **PHONE**, **CD**, **AM/FM** or **ON/OFF**.

## Receiving a second incoming call

**Note:** *The second incoming call function must be activated in your phone.*

If there is an incoming call whilst there is an ongoing call, a beep will be heard and you will have the option to end the active call and to accept the incoming call.

### Accepting a second incoming call

Second incoming calls can be accepted by pressing either the call accept button, the **PHONE** button, or the **MODE** button on the remote control.

### Rejecting a second incoming call

Second incoming calls can be rejected by pressing the call reject button. Units without a telephone keypad can also reject a second incoming call by pressing the **CD** button, or the **AM/FM** button.

## Muting the microphone

During a call, it is possible to mute the microphone. Whilst muted, confirmation will appear in the display.

# Telephone

---

## Audio units with green call accept button

Press the call accept button. Press the button once again to turn this function off.

## Audio units without green call accept button

Press the seek up or down button. Press the button once again to turn this function off.

## Changing the active phone

**Note:** *Phones must be bonded to the system before they can be made active.*

### Using the station storage button

**Note:** *This process is only for audio units without a telephone keypad.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button on the audio unit.
2. Press the preset number required (using the station preset buttons 1 - 6).

### Using the audio unit menu

**Note:** *After bonding a phone to the system, this becomes the active phone.*

1. Press the **PHONE** or call accept button.
2. Press the **MENU** button on the audio unit.
3. Select the **ACTIVE PHONE** option on the audio unit.
4. Scroll through the different stored phones by using the seek buttons to display the bonded phones.
5. Press the **MENU** button to select the phone which is to be the active phone.

## Debonding a bonded phone

A bonded phone can be deleted from the system at any time, unless a phone call is in progress.

1. Press the **PHONE** or call accept button.
2. Press the **MENU** button on the audio unit.
3. Select the **DEBOND** option on the audio unit.
4. Scroll through the different phones by using the seek buttons and display the phone to be debonded.
5. Press the **MENU** button to select the phone which is to be debonded.

## Debonding a bonded phone - Sony radio

A bonded phone can be deleted from the system at any time, unless a phone call is in progress.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the up/down arrow buttons until you reach the **DEBOND** option.
3. Scroll through the different phones by using the seek buttons and display the phone to be debonded.
4. Press the OK button to be debond.

## USING THE TELEPHONE - VEHICLES WITH: NAVIGATION SYSTEM

This chapter describes the phone functions of the Navigation System.

**Note:** *Refer to your Navigation System guide for details of the controls.*

An active phone must be present.

Even if connected to the Navigation System, your phone can still be used in the usual way.

# Telephone

---

## Making a call

### Dialling a number

Phone numbers can be dialled using voice control. See **Voice control** (page 279).

### Ending a call

Calls can be ended by pressing either the **END** button, the **MODE** button on the remote switch or the **ON/OFF** button on the navigation system.

### Redialling a number

1. Press the **PHONE** button on the unit.
2. Select **REDIAL**.

## Receiving an incoming call

### Accepting an incoming call

Incoming calls can be accepted by pressing either the call accept button, the **MODE** button on the remote control, the **PHONE** button on the unit or by using the **ACCEPT** option in the menu.

### Rejecting an incoming call

Incoming calls can be rejected by pressing either the call reject button, the **CD** or **AM/FM** buttons on the unit, or by using the **REJECT** option in the menu.

### Receiving a second incoming call

**Note:** *The second incoming call function must be activated in your phone.*

If there is an incoming call, whilst there is an ongoing call, a beep will be heard and you will have the option to end the active call and to accept the incoming call.

### Accepting a second incoming call

Second incoming calls can be accepted by pressing either the call accept button, the **MODE** button on the remote control, the **PHONE** button on the unit or by using the **ACCEPT** option in the menu.

**Note:** *This will cancel the ongoing call.*

### Rejecting a second incoming call

Second incoming calls can be rejected by pressing either the call reject button, or one of the following buttons on the unit: **CD**, **AM/FM**.

### Muting the microphone

During a call, it is possible to mute the microphone. Whilst muted, confirmation will appear in the display.

### SD navigation units

Press the mute button (symbol of a microphone with a line through it). Press the button once again to turn this function off.

### CD navigation units

Press the microphone mute button. Press the button once again to turn this function off.

### Changing the active phone

**Note:** *Phones must be bonded to the system before they can be made active.*

**Note:** *After bonding a phone to the system, this becomes the active phone.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button on the unit.
2. Using the **BT SETTINGS** option in the menu, select the active phone from the list.

# Telephone

---

## Debonding a bonded phone

A bonded phone can be deleted from the system at any time, unless a phone call is in progress.

1. Press the **PHONE** button on the unit.
2. Select the **BT SETTINGS** option in the menu.
3. Select the **DEBOND** option in the menu.
4. Select the phone from the list.

# Voice control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### CAUTION

 Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.

Voice recognition enables operation of the system without the need to divert your attention from the road ahead in order to change settings, or receive feedback from the system.

Whenever you issue one of the defined commands with the system active, the voice recognition system converts your command into a control signal for the system. Your inputs take the form of dialogues or commands. You are guided through these dialogues by announcements or questions.

Please familiarise yourself with the functions of the system before using voice recognition.

### Supported commands

The voice control system allows you to control the following vehicle functions:

- Bluetooth phone
- radio
- CD Player/CD Changer
- external device (USB)
- external device (iPod)
- automatic climate control
- navigation system - refer to separate navigation handbook).

### System response

As you work through a voice session the system will prompt you with a beep tone each time the system is ready to proceed.

Do not try to give any commands until the beep tone has been heard. The voice control system will repeat each spoken command back to you.

If you are not sure how to continue say "HELP" for assistance or "CANCEL" if you do not wish to continue.

The "HELP" function provides only a subset of the available voice commands. Detailed explanations of all possible voice commands can be found on the following pages.

### Voice commands

All voice commands should be given using a natural speaking voice, as if speaking to a passenger or on the phone. Your voice level should be dependant on the surrounding noise level inside or outside the vehicle but do not shout.

## USING VOICE CONTROL

### System operation

The order and content of the voice controls are given in the following lists. The tables show the sequence of user voice commands and system responses for each available function.

<> indicates a number or stored name tag to be inserted by the user.

### Short cuts

There are a number of voice command short cuts available, which allow you to control some vehicle features without having to follow the complete command menu. These are:

- Phone: CALL or DIAL NAME, DIAL NUMBER, and REDIAL.
- Phone: CALL FIRST NAME, LAST NAME at LOCATION. Example: Call Fred Bloggs at home.

# Voice control

- CD player or CD changer: DISC and TRACK.
- Automatic climate control: TEMPERATURE, AUTO MODE, DEFROSTING ON, DEMISTING ON, DEFROSTING OFF and DEMISTING OFF.
- Radio: TUNE NAME.
- External device (USB, iPod and SD card): TRACK.

## Start communicating with the system

Before you can start talking to the system you first have to press the **VOICE** or **MODE** button for each operation and wait until the system answers with a beep. See (page 279).

Press the button again to cancel the voice session.

## Name tag

The name tag functionality can support the phone, audio and navigation features by using the "STORE NAME" function. You can assign name tags to items such as favourite radio stations and personal phone contacts. See **Audio unit commands** (page 280). See **Telephone commands** (page 289). See **Navigation system commands** (page 294).

- Store up to 20 name tags per function.
- The average recording time for each name tag is approximately 2-3 seconds.

## AUDIO UNIT COMMANDS

### CD Player

You can control playback directly by voice control.

### Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

<b>"CD PLAYER"</b>
"HELP"
"PLAY"
"TRACK"
"SHUFFLE ALL"
"SHUFFLE FOLDER"
"SHUFFLE OFF"
"REPEAT FOLDER"

# Voice control

<b>"CD PLAYER"</b>
"REPEAT TRACK"
"REPEAT OFF"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

\*\* Only available if the CD contains audio data files like MP3 or WMA.

## Track

You can choose a track on your CD directly.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CD PLAYER"	"CD PLAYER"
2	"TRACK"*	"TRACK NUMBER PLEASE"
3	"<a number between 1 and 99>***"	"TRACK <number>"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

\*\* Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to four single digits (for example "2", "4", "5" for track 245)

## Shuffle all

To set random playback.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CD PLAYER"	"CD PLAYER"
2	"SHUFFLE ALL"	

## CD Changer

### Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

# Voice control

---

<b>"CD CHANGER"</b>
"HELP"
"PLAY"
"DISC"*
"TRACK"*
"SHUFFLE ALL"
"SHUFFLE CD"
"SHUFFLE FOLDER"***
"SHUFFLE OFF"
"REPEAT CD"
"REPEAT FOLDER"***
"REPEAT TRACK"
"REPEAT OFF"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

\*\* Only available if the CD contains audio data files like MP3 or WMA.

## Disc

If you have a CD changer you can choose the disc number.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CD CHANGER"	"CD CHANGER"
2	"DISC"*	"DISC NUMBER PLEASE"
3	"<a number between 1 and 6>"	"DISC <number>"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

## Track

You can choose a track on your CD directly.

# Voice control

---

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CD CHANGER"	"CD CHANGER"
2	"TRACK"	"TRACK NUMBER PLEASE"
3	"<a number between 1 and 99>"**	"TRACK <number>"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

\*\* Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to four single digits (for example "2", "4", "5" for track 245)

## Shuffle CD

To set random playback within the CD contents.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CD CHANGER"	"CD CHANGER"
2	"SHUFFLE CD"	

## Radio

The radio voice commands support the functionality of the radio and allow you to tune radio stations by voice control.

## Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu.

<b>"RADIO"</b>
"HELP"
"AM"
"FM"
"TUNE NAME"*
"DELETE NAME"
"DELETE DIRECTORY"
"PLAY DIRECTORY"

# Voice control

<b>"RADIO"</b>
"STORE NAME"
"PLAY"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

## Tune frequency

This function allows you to tune your radio by voice commands.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"RADIO"	"RADIO"
2	"AM"	"AM FREQUENCY PLEASE"
	"FM"	"FM FREQUENCY PLEASE"
3	"<frequency>"	"TUNE <frequency>"

\* The frequency may be entered in a variety of ways. Refer below for representative examples.

FM band: 87.5 - 108.0 in increments of 0.1

- "Eighty nine point nine" (89.9)
- "Ninety" (90.0)
- "One hundred point five" (100.5)
- "One zero one point one" (101.1)
- "One zero eight" (108.0)

- "Five thirty one" (531)
- "Nine hundred" (900)
- "Fourteen forty" (1440)
- "Fifteen zero three" (1503)
- "Ten eighty" (1080)

### Store name

AM/MW band: 531 - 1602 in increments of 9

If you have tuned a radio station, you can store it with a name in the directory.

AM/LW band: 153 - 281 in increments of 1

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"RADIO"	"RADIO"
2	"STORE NAME"	"STORE NAME" "NAME PLEASE"
3	"<name>"	"REPEAT NAME PLEASE"
4	"<name>"	"STORING NAME"

# Voice control

Steps	User says	System answer
		"<name> STORED"

## Tune name

This function allows you to call up a stored radio station.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"RADIO"	"RADIO"
2	"TUNE NAME"*	"NAME PLEASE"
3	"<name>"	"TUNE <name>"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

## Delete name

This function allows you to delete a stored radio station.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"RADIO"	"RADIO"
2	"DELETE NAME"	"NAME PLEASE"
3	"<name>"	"DELETE <name>" "CONFIRM YES OR NO"
4	"YES"	"DELETED"
	"NO"	"COMMAND CANCELLED"

## Play directory

This function allows you to let the system tell you all of the stored radio stations.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"RADIO"	"RADIO"
2	"PLAY DIRECTORY"	"PLAY <DIRECTORY>"

# Voice control

## Delete directory

This function allows you to delete all stored radio stations at once.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"RADIO"	"RADIO"
2	"DELETE DIRECTORY"	"DELETE DIRECTORY" "CONFIRM YES OR NO"
3	"YES"	"RADIO DIRECTORY DELETED"
	"NO"	"COMMAND CANCELLED"

## Play

This function switches the audio source to the radio mode.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"RADIO"	"RADIO"
2	"PLAY"	

## Auxiliary input

This function allows you to switch the audio source to the attached auxiliary input device.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"
2	"LINE IN"	"LINE IN"

## External devices - USB

These voice commands support the functionality of an external USB device which may be connected to the audio unit.

## Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

# Voice control

---

<b>"EXTERNAL DEVICE", "USB"</b>
"HELP"
"PLAY"
"TRACK"
"PLAYLIST"*
"FOLDER"*
"SHUFFLE ALL"
"SHUFFLE FOLDER"
"SHUFFLE PLAYLIST"
"SHUFFLE OFF"
"REPEAT TRACK"
"REPEAT FOLDER"
"REPEAT OFF"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

\*\* Playlists and folders activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames. See **General Information** (page 297).

## USB play

This function allows you to switch the audio source to the attached USB device.

<b>Steps</b>	<b>User says</b>	<b>System answer</b>
1	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"
2	"USB"	"USB"
3	"PLAY"	

## USB Track

You can choose a track on your USB device directly.

# Voice control

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"
2	"USB"	"USB"
3	"TRACK"	"TRACK NUMBER PLEASE"
4	"<a number between 1 and 99>"*	"TRACK <number>"

\* Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to four single digits (for example "2", "4", "5" for track 245)

## External devices - iPod

These voice commands support the functionality of an iPod which may be connected to the audio unit.

## Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

"EXTERNAL DEVICE", "IPOD"
"HELP"
"PLAY"
"TRACK"
"PLAYLIST"**
"SHUFFLE ALL"
"SHUFFLE PLAYLIST"
"SHUFFLE OFF"
"REPEAT TRACK"
"REPEAT OFF"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

\*\* Playlists activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames. See **General Information** (page 297).

## iPod Track

You can choose a track off the all titles list of your iPod directly.

# Voice control

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"
2	"IPOD"	"IPOD"
3	"TRACK"	"TRACK NUMBER PLEASE"
4	"<a number between 1 and 99>"**	"TRACK <number>"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

\*\* Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to five single digits (for example "5", "2", "4", "5", "3" for track 52453), to a limit of 65535.

## iPod playlist

You can choose a playlist from your iPod directly.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"	"EXTERNAL DEVICE"
2	"IPOD"	"IPOD"
3	"PLAYLIST"*	"PLAYLIST NUMBER PLEASE"
4	"<a number between 1 and 10>"	"PLAYLIST <number>"

\* Playlists activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames. See **General Information** (page 297).

## TELEPHONE COMMANDS

### Phone

Your phone system allows you to create an additional phonebook. The stored entries can be dialled by voice control. Phone numbers stored by using voice control are stored on the vehicle system and not in your phone.

### Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

# Voice control

<b>"PHONE"</b>
"HELP"
"MOBILE NAME"*
"DIAL NUMBER"*
"DIAL NAME"*
"DELETE NAME"
"DELETE DIRECTORY"
"PLAY DIRECTORY"
"STORE NAME"
"REDIAL"
"ACCEPT CALLS"
"REJECT CALLS"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

## Phone functions

### Dial number

Phone numbers can be dialled after giving the name tag voice command.

<b>Steps</b>	<b>User says</b>	<b>System answer</b>
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"DIAL NUMBER"*	"NUMBER PLEASE"
3	"<phone number>"	"<phone number> CONTINUE?"
4	"DIAL"	"DIALLING"
	"CORRECTION"	"<repeat last part of number> CONTINUE?"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

# Voice control

## Dial name

Phone numbers can be dialled after giving the name tag voice command.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"DIAL NAME"*	"NAME PLEASE"
3	"<name>"	"DIAL <name>" "CONFIRM YES OR NO"
4	"YES"	"DIALLING"
	"NO"	"COMMAND CANCELLED"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

## Redial

This function allows you to redial the last dialled phone number.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"REDIAL"	"REDIAL" "CONFIRM YES OR NO"
3	"YES"	"DIALLING"
	"NO"	"COMMAND CANCELLED"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

## Mobile name

This function allows you to access phone numbers stored with a name tag in your mobile phone.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"MOBILE NAME"*	"MOBILE NAME" "<phone dependent dialogue>"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

# Voice control

## DTMF (Tone dialling)

This function transfers spoken numbers into DTMF tones. For example, to make a remote enquiry to your home answering machine or to enter a PIN number etc.

**Note:** DTMF can only be used during an ongoing call. Operate the VOICE button and wait for the system prompt.

Can only be used with vehicles installed with a dedicated VOICE button.

Steps	User says	System answer
1		"NUMBER PLEASE"
2	"<numbers 1 to 9, zero, hash, star>"	

## Create a phonebook

### Store name

New entries can be stored with the "STORE NAME" command. This feature can be used to dial a number by calling up the name instead of the full phone number.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"STORE NAME"	"STORE NAME" "NAME PLEASE"
3	"<name>"	"REPEAT NAME PLEASE"
4	"<name>"	"STORING NAME" "<name> STORED" "NUMBER PLEASE"
5	"<phone number>"	"<phone number>"
6	"STORE"	"STORING NUMBER" "<phone number>" "NUMBER STORED"

### Delete name

Stored names can also be deleted from the directory.

# Voice control

---

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"DELETE NAME"	"NAME PLEASE"
3	"<name>"	"DELETE <name>" "CONFIRM YES OR NO"
4	"YES"	"<name> DELETED"
	"NO"	"COMMAND CANCELLED"

## Play directory

Use this function to let the system tell you all stored entries.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"PLAY DIRECTORY"	"PLAY DIRECTORY"

## Delete directory

This function allows you to delete all entries in one go.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"DELETE DIRECTORY"	"DELETE DIRECTORY" "CONFIRM YES OR NO"
3	"YES"	"DIRECTORY DELETED"
	"NO"	"COMMAND CANCELLED"

## Main settings

### Reject calls

Calls can be set to be automatically rejected using voice control.

# Voice control

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"PHONE"	"PHONE"
2	"REJECT CALLS"	"REJECT CALLS"
	"ACCEPT CALLS"*	"ACCEPT CALLS"

\* use this command to turn the reject mode off

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM COMMANDS

Please refer to your separate Navigation manual for details of the command menus.

### Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

## CLIMATE CONTROL COMMANDS

### Climate

The climate voice commands supports the functionality of the fan speed, temperature and mode settings. Not all functions are available on all vehicles.

"CLIMATE"
"HELP"
"FAN"*
"DEFROSTING/DEMISTING ON"*
"DEFROSTING/DEMISTING OFF"*
"TEMPERATURE"
"AUTO MODE"

\* Can be used as a shortcut. On vehicles fitted with an English language module the "FAN" shortcut is not available.

# Voice control

## Fan

This function allows you to adjust the fan speed.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CLIMATE"	"CLIMATE"
2	"FAN"	"FAN SPEED PLEASE"
3	"MINIMUM"	"FAN MINIMUM"
	"<a number between 1 and 7>"	"FAN <number>"
	"MAXIMUM"	"FAN MAXIMUM"

\* Can be used as a shortcut. On vehicles fitted with an English language module the "FAN" shortcut is not available.

## Defrosting/Demisting

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CLIMATE"	"CLIMATE"
2	"DEFROSTING ON/DEMISTING ON"	"DEFROSTING ON/DEMISTING ON"
	"DEFROSTING OFF/DEMISTING OFF"	"DEFROSTING OFF/DEMISTING OFF"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

## Temperature

This function allows you to adjust the temperature.

Steps	User says	System answer
1	"CLIMATE"	"CLIMATE"
2	"TEMPERATURE"	"TEMPERATURE PLEASE"
3	"MINIMUM"	"TEMPERATURE MINIMUM"

## Voice control

---

<b>Steps</b>	<b>User says</b>	<b>System answer</b>
	"<a number between 15 and 29 °C with 0.5 increments>" or "<a number between 59 and 84 °F>"	"TEMPERATURE <number>"
	"MAXIMUM"	"TEMPERATURE MAXIMUM"

\* Can be used as a shortcut.

### Auto mode

<b>Steps</b>	<b>User says</b>	<b>System answer</b>
1	"CLIMATE"	"CLIMATE"
2	"AUTO MODE"	"AUTO MODE"

\* Can be used as a shortcut. Can be deactivated by selecting a different temperature or fan speed.

# Connectivity

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### CAUTIONS

-  Take care when handling external devices with exposed electrical connectors (such as the USB plug). Always replace the protective cap/shield when possible. There may be a risk of electrostatic discharge causing damage to the device.
-  Do not touch or handle the USB socket in the vehicle. Cover the socket when not in use.
-  Only use USB Mass-Storage device compliant devices.
-  Always switch your audio unit to a different source (for example the radio) before unplugging the USB device.
-  Do not install or connect USB hubs or splitters.

**Note:** *The system is only designed to recognize and read suitable audio files from a USB device that conforms to the USB Mass-Storage device class or an iPod. Not all available USB devices can be guaranteed to function with the system.*

**Note:** *It is possible to connect compatible devices with a trailing USB lead as well as those that plug into the vehicle USB socket directly (for example USB memory sticks and pen drives).*

**Note:** *Some USB devices with a higher power consumption may not be compatible (for example some larger hard drives).*

**Note:** *Access time to read the files on the external device will vary depending upon factors such as the file structure, size and device content.*

The system supports a range of external devices, to fully integrate with your audio unit via the USB and auxiliary input sockets. Once connected, control of the external device is possible via the audio unit.

A list of typical compatible devices are shown below:

- USB memory sticks
- USB portable hard drives
- Some MP3 players with USB connection
- iPod media players (refer to **www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com** for latest compatibility list).

The system is USB 2.0 full speed compatible, USB 1.1 host compliant and supports FAT 16/32 file systems.

### Information on audio file structures for external devices

#### USB

Create only a single partition on the USB device.

If playlists are created, they must contain correct file paths referenced to the USB device. It is recommended to create the playlist after the audio files have been transferred to the USB device.

Playlists must be created in .m3u format.

Audio files must be in .mp3 format.

Do not exceed the following limits:

- 1000 items per folder (files, folders and playlists)
- 5000 folders per USB device (including playlists)
- 8 subfolder levels.

# Connectivity

---

To enable voice control for custom playlists and folders, follow the procedure below:

- Create folders named with the structure "**Ford<\*>**" where <\*> is a number 1-10. For example "**Ford3**" without an extension.
- Create playlists named with the structure "**Ford<\*>.m3u**" where <\*> is a number 1-10. For example "**Ford5.m3u**" without any space between "**Ford**" and the number.

Thereafter, custom folders and playlists will be selectable with voice control. See **Audio unit commands** (page 280).

## iPod

To enable voice control for custom playlists, create playlists named with the structure "**Ford<\*>**" where <\*> is a number 1-10. For example "**Ford7**" without any space between "**Ford**" and the number.

Thereafter, playlists will be selectable with voice control. See **Audio unit commands** (page 280).

## CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE

### WARNING



Make sure the external device is securely mounted within the vehicle, and that trailing connections do not obstruct any of the driving controls.

External devices may be connected using the auxiliary input socket and the USB port. See **Auxiliary Input Socket** (page 131). See **USB Port** (page 131).

## Connection

Plug in the device, and if necessary secure it to prevent movement within the vehicle.

### Connecting an iPod

For optimum convenience and audio quality, we recommend that you purchase a dedicated single connection lead available from your dealer.

Alternatively, it is possible to connect your iPod using the standard iPod USB cable and a separate 3.5mm audio jack lead. If using this method preset the iPod volume to maximum and turn off any equalizer settings before making the connections:

- Connect the headphone output of the iPod to the AUX IN socket.
- Connect the USB cable from the iPod to the vehicle USB socket.

## CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: BLUETOOTH

### Connecting a Bluetooth audio device

#### CAUTION



As various standards exist, manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the Bluetooth device and the system, which in some cases may limit system functionality. To avoid this situation, only recommended devices should be used.

Please visit the website [www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com](http://www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com) for full details.

---

# Connectivity

## Bonding the device

**Note:** Some audio and navigation units have a separate Bluetooth audio menu. Use this to access setup and control.

To connect the device to the system follow the same procedure as for Bluetooth hands free phones. See **Bluetooth setup** (page 273).

## Operating the device

Select Bluetooth audio as the active source.

Tracks can be accessed by skipping forwards and backwards using the steering wheel controls, or directly from the audio unit controls.

## USING A USB DEVICE

Various icons are used to identify types of audio file, folders etc.



USB device is the active source



Folder



Playlist



Album



Artist



Filename



Track title



Information not available

## Sony radio

### Operation

Select the USB device as the audio source by repeatedly pressing the **CD/AUX** button until USB appears in the display. After first connecting the USB device, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Subsequently, following audio source switching, the position of playback on the USB device is remembered.

To browse the device contents, press the up/down arrow key or the OK button once.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the folder view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example a folder named after an album, with individual album tracks within that folder).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- Icons to the left of track/folder text indicate the type of file/folder. Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the USB device contents, use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through lists, and the left/right keys to move up or down within the folder hierarchy. Once your desired track, playlist or folder is highlighted, press the OK button to select playback.

**Note:** If you wish to jump to the top level of the USB device contents, press and hold the left arrow key.

# Connectivity

---

## Audio control

Press the left and right arrow keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.

Press and hold the left/right arrow keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Press the up/down arrow key or the OK button to browse the device contents.

Press the MENU key to enter the USB menu. It is possible to enable shuffle and repeat functions here with respect to folders and playlists.

Press the SCAN button to scan the whole device, current folder or a playlist if it is in operation.

Press the **INFO** button to display the following:

- filename
- title
- artist
- album
- track number and playing time.

Repeated button presses will scroll through these displays.

## CD Navigation units

### Operation

Select the USB device as the audio source by pressing the **CD/AUX** button until DEVICES appears in the display. Select DEVICES and then select USB from the available device list. After first connecting the USB device, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Subsequently, following audio source switching, the position of playback on the USB device is remembered.

To browse the device contents, press the **SELECT** button once.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the folder view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example a folder named after an album, with individual album tracks within that folder).
- "<" to the left hand side of the display indicates that a further level up is readable.
- Icons to the left of track/folder text indicate the type of file/folder. Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the USB device contents, use the rotary scroll/select button to browse through lists. Push the button to expand the contents within the highlighted playlist or folder, or to commence playback of a particular track. Press **ESC** to go up one level.

## Audio control

Press the **SEEK** up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.

Press and hold the **SEEK** keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Rotate or press the **SELECT** button to browse the device contents.

Press SHUFFLE or REPEAT buttons to enable shuffle and repeat functions with respect to folders and playlists. Different options may appear depending upon whether or not a playlist is in operation.

Press the SCAN button to scan the current playlist if it is in operation, or the complete USB device or folder.

# Connectivity

---

Press the **INFO** button to display the following:

- filename
- title
- artist
- album
- track number and playing time.

## SD Navigation units

### Operation

Select the USB device as the audio source by pressing the **CD/AUX** button until the USB button appears to the left of the display. Select USB from the available device list.

**Note:** *Some devices may be shown but not selectable, depending if the device is connected or not.*

After first connecting the USB device, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Subsequently, following audio source switching, the position of playback on the USB device is remembered.

To browse the device contents, press the scroll up or down arrow button.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the folder view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example a folder named after an album, with individual album tracks within that folder).

- "<" to the left hand side of the display indicates that a further level up is readable.
- Icons to the left of track/folder text indicate the type of file/folder. Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the USB device contents, use the scroll buttons to browse through lists. Push the button to expand the contents within the highlighted playlist or folder, or to commence playback of a particular track. Press the left arrow key to go up one level.

### Audio control

Press the **SEEK** up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.

Press and hold the **SEEK** keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Press the scroll bar arrow keys to browse the device contents.

Press SHUFFLE or REPEAT buttons to enable shuffle and repeat functions with respect to folders and playlists.

Press the SCAN button to scan the current playlist if it is in operation, or the complete USB device or folder.

Press the **INFO** button to display the following:

- filename
- title
- artist
- album
- track number and playing time.

## USING AN IPOD

Various icons are used to identify types of audio file, folders etc.

# Connectivity



iPod is the active source



iPod playlist



iPod artist



iPod album



iPod genre



iPod song



iPod generic category



iPod generic media file

## Sony radio

### Operation

Connect the iPod. See **Connecting an external device** (page 298).

Select the iPod as the audio source by repeatedly pressing the **CD/AUX** button until iPod appears in the display.

The iPod menu list for browsing contents will be available through the radio display. Navigation of the contents follows the same principles as for iPod standalone use (for example search by artist, title, etc.). To browse the iPod contents, press the up/down arrow key or the OK button once.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the list view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example all albums by a particular artist).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- An icon on the left side indicates the type of the currently displayed list (for example list of albums). Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the iPod contents, use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through lists, and the left/right keys to move up or down within the hierarchy. Once your desired track, playlist, album, artist or genre is highlighted, press the OK button to select playback.

**Note:** *If you wish to jump to the top level of the iPod contents, press and hold the left arrow key.*

### Audio control

Press the left and right arrow keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.

Press and hold the left/right arrow keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Press the up/down arrow key or the OK button to browse the iPod contents.

Press the **MENU** key to enter the iPod menu. It is possible to enable shuffle and repeat functions here. It is also possible to enable the iPod "Shuffle songs" option directly from the top level.

Press the **SCAN** button to scan the currently selected tracks.

# Connectivity

---

Press the **INFO** button to display the following:

- title
- artist
- track number and playing time.

Repeated button presses will scroll through these displays.

## CD Navigation units

### Operation

Connect the iPod. See **Connecting an external device** (page 298).

Select the iPod as the audio source by pressing the **CD/AUX** button until **DEVICES** appears in the display. Select **DEVICES** and then select iPod from the available device list.

The iPod menu list for browsing contents will be available through the display. Navigation of the contents follows the same principles as for iPod standalone use (for example search by artist, title, etc.). To browse the iPod contents, press the **SELECT** button once.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the list view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example all albums by a particular artist).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- An icon on the left side indicates the type of the currently displayed list (for example list of albums). Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the iPod contents, use the rotary scroll/select button to browse through lists. Push the button to expand the contents within the highlighted playlist, album, artist, genre or to commence playback of a particular track. Press **ESC** to go up one level.

### Audio control

Press the **SEEK** up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.

Press and hold the **SEEK** keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Rotate or press the **SELECT** button to browse the iPod contents.

Press the **MENU** key to enter the iPod menu. It is possible to enable shuffle and repeat functions here. It is also possible to enable the iPod "Shuffle songs" option directly from the top level.

Press the **SCAN** button to scan the currently selected tracks.

Press the **INFO** button to display the following:

- title
- artist
- track number and playing time.

## SD Navigation units

### Operation

Connect the iPod. See **Connecting an external device** (page 298).

Select the iPod as the audio source by pressing the **CD/AUX** button until the iPod button appears to the left of the display. Select iPod from the available device list.

**Note:** *Some devices may be shown but not selectable, depending if the device is connected or not.*

# Connectivity

---

The iPod menu list for browsing contents will be available through the display. Navigation of the contents follows the same principles as for iPod standalone use (for example search by artist, title, etc.). To browse the iPod contents, press the scroll up or down arrow button.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the list view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example all albums by a particular artist).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- An icon on the left side indicates the type of the currently displayed list (for example list of albums). Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the iPod contents, use the scroll buttons to browse through lists. Push the button to expand the contents within the highlighted playlist, album, artist, genre or to commence playback of a particular track. Press the left arrow key to go up one level.

## Audio control

Press the **SEEK** up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.

Press and hold the **SEEK** keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Press the scroll bar arrow keys to browse the iPod contents.

Press the MENU key to enter the iPod menu. It is possible to enable shuffle and repeat functions here. It is also possible to enable the iPod "Shuffle songs" option directly from the top level.

Press the SCAN button to scan the currently selected tracks.

Press the **INFO** button to display the following:

- title
- artist
- track number and playing time.

# Appendices

---

## TYPE APPROVALS

### FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: WJLRX-42

IC: 7847A-RX42

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### RX-42 - declaration of conformity

We, the party responsible for compliance, declare under our sole responsibility that the Handset Integration product RX-42 is in conformity with the provisions of the following Council Directive: 1999/5/EC. A copy of the Declaration of Conformity can be found at:

[www.novero.com/declaration\\_of\\_conformity](http://www.novero.com/declaration_of_conformity)

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## TYPE APPROVALS

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

## TYPE APPROVALS



© 2008 NAVTEQ B.V. All rights reserved.

## Appendices

(AT)	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
(PL)	"© EuroGeographics"
(FR)	"source: GéoRoute® IGN France & BD Cartho® IGN France"
(DE)	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
(GB)	"Based upon Crown Copyright material."
(GR)	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
(IT)	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
(NO)	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
(PT)	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
(ES)	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
(SE)	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
(CH)	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie"

### TYPE APPROVALS

#### EU Declaration

Hereby, Valeo declares that this short range device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

### Certificate for United Arab Emirates



E125209

ER-GEN-00-0002-24

# Appendices

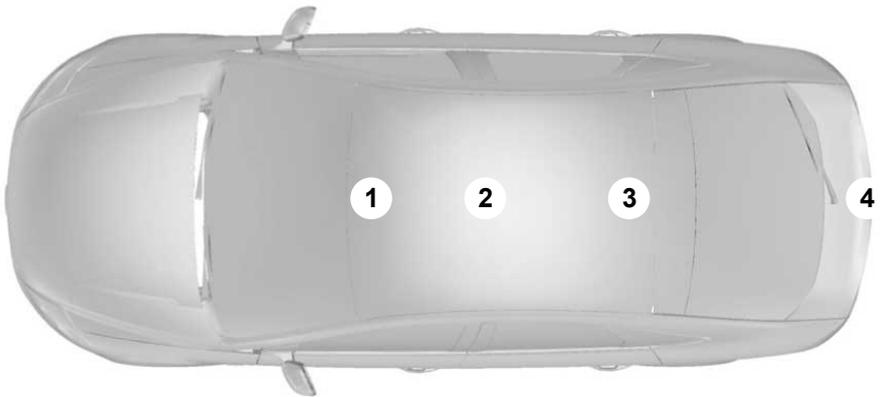
## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

### WARNINGS

 Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

### WARNINGS

-  The RF (radio frequency) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.
-  Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.
-  Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.
-  Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 centimetres (4 inches) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E85998

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	3, 4
30 – 54	50 W	1, 2, 3
68 – 87.5	50 W	1, 2, 3

## Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
142 – 176	50 W	1, 2, 3
380 – 512	50 W	1, 2, 3
806 – 940	10 W	1, 2, 3
1200 – 1400	10 W	1, 2, 3
1710 – 1885	10 W	1, 2, 3
1885 – 2025	10 W	1, 2, 3

**Note:** After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition **ON**
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

# Index

## A

- A/C  
See: Climate Control.....108
- About This Manual.....7
- ABS  
See: Brakes.....154
- ABS driving hints  
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....154
- ACC  
See: Adaptive cruise control (ACC).....167
- Accessories  
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....7  
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....168
- Active suspension.....159  
Principle of Operation.....159
- Active suspension  
See: Using active suspension.....159
- Adaptive cruise control (ACC).....167  
Principle of Operation.....167
- Adaptive cruise control (ACC)  
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....168
- Adaptive Headlamps.....59  
Cornering lamps.....60
- Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With: Adaptive Front Lighting/Xenon Headlamps.....58
- Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....49
- AFS  
See: Adaptive Headlamps.....59
- Air Conditioning  
See: Climate Control.....108
- Air Vents.....108  
Front air vents.....108  
Rear air vents.....108
- Alarm.....46  
Principle of Operation.....46
- Alternative frequencies.....263  
All except Sony and Sony DAB.....263  
Sony and Sony DAB.....263
- Appendices.....305
- Arming the alarm.....48
- Arming the engine immobiliser.....45
- Ashtray.....128  
Front ashtray.....128  
Rear ashtray.....128
- At a Glance.....11
- Adjusting the steering wheel.....15
- Autolamps.....16
- Automatic climate control.....18
- Automatic main beam control.....16
- Automatic transmission.....20
- Autowipers.....15
- Blind spot information system (BLIS).....17
- Changing the wiper blades.....15
- Diesel particulate filter (DPF).....19
- Driver alert.....21
- Electric child safety locks.....14
- Electric folding mirrors.....17
- Electric windows.....16
- Engine idle speed after starting.....18
- Fuel filler flap.....19
- Information displays.....17
- Instrument panel overview - left-hand drive.....11
- Instrument panel overview - right-hand drive.....12
- Keyless entry.....14
- Keyless starting.....18
- Lane departure warning.....21
- Manual climate control.....17
- Manual transmission.....20
- Rear view camera.....20
- Reverse mirror dipping.....17
- Speed limiter.....21
- Towing the vehicle on four wheels.....21
- Audible Warnings and Indicators.....83  
Switching the chimes on and off.....83
- Audio Control.....49  
Mode.....49  
Seek.....50
- Audio distortion reduction (CLIP).....262  
All except Sony and Sony DAB.....262  
Sony and Sony DAB.....262
- Audio introduction.....250
- Audio menu control.....256  
Sony CD and Sony CD DAB with Bluetooth.....258
- Audio System Security.....254
- Audio troubleshooting.....271
- Audio Troubleshooting.....271
- Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays.....255

# Index

Audio unit commands.....	280
Auxiliary input.....	286
CD Changer.....	281
CD Player.....	280
External devices - iPod.....	288
External devices - USB.....	286
Radio.....	283
Audio unit menus.....	262
Audio unit operation.....	256
Audio unit overview.....	251
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	75
Autolamps.....	56
Automatic Climate Control.....	111
Air distribution.....	112
Blower.....	112
Mono mode.....	112
Recirculated air.....	113
Setting the temperature.....	112
Switching off the automatic climate control.....	113
Switching the air conditioning on and off.....	113
To switch mono mode back on.....	112
To switch mono mode off.....	112
Windscreen defrosting and demisting.....	113
Automatic Main Beam Control.....	56
Activating the system.....	57
Manually overriding the system.....	57
Setting the system sensitivity.....	57
Automatic Transmission.....	151
Drive modes.....	152
Emergency park position release lever.....	152
Hints on driving with an automatic transmission.....	152
Selector lever positions.....	151
Automatic volume control.....	262
All except Sony and Sony DAB.....	262
Sony and Sony DAB.....	262
Autostore control.....	258
6000CD.....	259
Sony CD.....	259
Autowipers.....	51
Auxiliary Heater.....	114
Changing the remote control battery.....	117
Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country).....	118
Feedback during starting and switching off.....	116
Fuel operated heater (depending on country).....	117
Parking heater.....	114
Programming the transmitter.....	117
Remote start in combination with direct start or timer.....	116
Remote starting.....	116
Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket.....	270
Auxiliary Input Socket.....	131
Auxiliary Power Points.....	128
<b>B</b>	
Balance/fade control.....	256
6000CD.....	256
Sony and Sony DAB.....	256
Bass/treble control.....	256
6000CD.....	256
Sony and Sony DAB.....	256
Battery connection points.....	228
Blind Spot Monitor.....	76
Blind spot information system (BLIS).....	76
Detection errors.....	77
System detection and alerts.....	76
Turning the system on and off.....	77
Using the system.....	76
Bluetooth setup.....	273
Handling of phones.....	273
Requirements for Bluetooth connection.....	273
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Bonnet.....	208
Booster cables	
See: Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	227
Booster Seats.....	23
Booster cushion (Group 3).....	24
Booster seat (Group 2).....	23
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	221
Brakes.....	154
Principle of Operation.....	154
Bulb changing	
See: Changing a Bulb.....	64

# Index

Bulb Specification Chart.....	70	Child Safety.....	22
<b>C</b>		Child Safety Locks.....	28
Capacities and Specifications.....	246	Electric child safety locks.....	29
Technical Specifications.....	246	Manual child safety locks.....	28
Cargo Nets.....	183	Child Seat Positioning.....	24
Luggage retention net.....	183	Child Seats.....	22
Car Wash		Child restraints for different mass	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	225	groups.....	22
Catalytic Converter.....	144	Cigar Lighter.....	127
Driving with a catalytic converter.....	144	Cleaning the Exterior.....	225
CD changer.....	131	Body paintwork preservation.....	226
Changing a Bulb.....	64	Cleaning the alloy wheels.....	225
Approach lamp.....	66	Cleaning the chrome trim.....	225
Central high mounted brake lamp.....	68	Cleaning the headlamps.....	225
Daytime running lamps.....	65	Cleaning the rear window.....	225
Front fog lamps.....	67	Cleaning the Interior.....	226
Headlamp.....	64	Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens,	
Interior lamps.....	68	radio screens.....	226
Luggage compartment lamp.....	70	Rear windows.....	226
Number plate lamp.....	68	Seat belts.....	226
Reading lamps.....	69	Climate Control.....	108
Rear lamps.....	67	Principle of Operation.....	108
Side repeater.....	66	Climate control commands.....	294
Vanity mirror lamp.....	70	Climate.....	294
Changing a Fuse.....	195	Clock.....	127
Changing a Road Wheel.....	229	Coded keys.....	45
Assembling the wheel brace.....	232	Cold Weather Precautions.....	192
Installing a road wheel.....	234	Compact disc playback.....	266
Jacking and lifting points.....	230	Compact disc changer playback.....	266
Locking wheel nuts.....	229	Compact Disc Player.....	265
Removing a road wheel.....	233	Compact disc track compression.....	267
Removing the wheel trim.....	232	All except Sony and Sony DAB.....	267
Vehicle jack.....	229	Sony and Sony DAB.....	267
Vehicles with a temporary spare		Compact disc track scanning.....	267
wheel.....	229	6000CD.....	267
Changing the remote control		Sony and Sony DAB.....	267
battery.....	35	Connecting an external device.....	298
Remote control with a folding key		Connection.....	298
blade.....	35	Connecting an external device - Vehicles	
Remote control without a folding key		With: Bluetooth.....	298
blade.....	36	Connecting a Bluetooth audio	
Changing the Vehicle Battery.....	228	device.....	298
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	53	Connectivity.....	297
Rear window wiper blades.....	53	General Information.....	297
Windscreen wiper blades.....	53	Convenience features.....	127
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	52	Coolant Check	
		See: Engine Coolant Check.....	220

# Index

Cruise Control.....	165
Principle of Operation.....	165
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	165
Cup Holders.....	129

## D

Daytime Running Lamps.....	56
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	138
Regeneration.....	138
Digital signal processing (DSP).....	262
Changing the DSP settings.....	262
DSP equaliser.....	262
DSP occupancy.....	262
Direction Indicators.....	61
Disabling the passenger airbag.....	33
Disabling the passenger airbag.....	34
Enabling the passenger airbag.....	34
Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch.....	33
Disarming the alarm.....	48
Vehicles with keyless entry.....	48
Vehicles without keyless entry.....	48
Disarming the engine immobiliser.....	45
Dog Guard.....	184
Installing behind the front seats.....	185
Installing behind the rear seats.....	185
DPF	
See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....	138
Driver Alert.....	175
Principle of Operation.....	175
Driving Hints.....	192
Driving Through Water.....	192
Driving through water .....	192
DRL	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	56

## E

Eco Mode.....	142
Principle of Operation.....	142
Ejecting compact discs.....	267
6000CD.....	268
Sony CD.....	268

Electric exterior mirrors.....	74
Electric folding mirrors.....	74
Mirror tilting positions.....	74
Reverse mirror dipping.....	75
Electric sunroof.....	118
Opening and closing the sunroof.....	119
Opening and closing the sunroof automatically.....	119
Sunroof anti-trap protection.....	119
Sunroof relearning.....	120
Sunroof safety mode.....	120
Tilting the sunroof.....	119
Electromagnetic compatibility.....	307
Ending compact disc playback.....	269
Engine Block Heater.....	138
Engine Coolant Check.....	220
Checking the coolant level.....	220
Topping up.....	221
Engine immobiliser.....	45
Principle of Operation.....	45
Engine Oil Check.....	220
Checking the oil level.....	220
Topping up.....	220
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	219
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel/2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel/2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	220
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L EcoBoost SCTi (Sigma).....	219
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratec-HE (M14)/2.3L Duratec-HE (M14).....	219
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (M14).....	219
Entering a security code.....	254
6000CD, Sony and Sony DAB.....	254
Exterior Mirrors.....	74
Manual folding mirrors.....	74

## F

Fastening the seat belts.....	32
Fast forward/reverse.....	266
All except Sony and Sony DAB.....	266
Sony and Sony DAB.....	266
First Aid Kit.....	193
Floor Mats.....	132

# Index

Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	57
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	58
Forward alert function.....	172
Adjusting the warning sensitivity.....	172
Switching the system on and off.....	172
Front Fog Lamps.....	57
Fuel and Refuelling.....	143
Technical Specifications.....	146
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	114
Fuel Consumption.....	146
Fuel Consumption	
See: Technical Specifications.....	146
Fuel filler flap.....	144
Refuelling with a fuel can.....	146
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	143
Long-term storage.....	144
Fuel Quality - E85.....	143
Long-term storage.....	143
Fuel Quality - Petrol.....	143
Fuse Box Locations.....	194
Central fuse box.....	194
Engine compartment fuse box.....	194
Rear fuse box - 4-door and 5-door.....	194
Rear fuse box - Estate.....	195
Fuses.....	194
Fuse Specification Chart.....	196
Central fuse box.....	200
Engine compartment fuse box.....	196
Rear fuse box.....	202
<b>G</b>	
Gauges.....	79
Engine coolant temperature gauge.....	80
Fuel gauge.....	81
Gearbox	
See: Transmission.....	151
General Driving Points - Vehicles With:	
Sports Suspension.....	192
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	35
Glasses Holder.....	131
Global Opening and Closing.....	40
Global closing.....	41
Global opening.....	41
Glove Box.....	129
Cooled glove box.....	129
<b>H</b>	
Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	154
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	60
Headlamp adjustment	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With:	
Adaptive Front Lighting/Xenon	
Headlamps.....	58
Headlamp Levelling.....	58
Recommended headlamp levelling switch	
positions.....	58
Headlamp Washers.....	52
Head Restraints.....	124
Adjusting the head restraint.....	124
Removing the head restraint.....	124
Heated Seats.....	125
Raising and Lowering the	
Temperature.....	125
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	113
Heated exterior mirrors.....	113
Heated windows.....	113
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	108
Hill launch assist (HLA)	
See: Using hill start assist.....	156
Hill Start Assist.....	156
Principle of Operation.....	156
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock	
Brakes.....	154
HLA	
See: Hill Start Assist.....	156
See: Using hill start assist.....	156
<b>I</b>	
Ignition Switch.....	133
Immobiliser	
See: Engine immobiliser.....	45
Important audio information.....	250
Audio unit labels.....	250
Disc labels.....	250
Incorrect security code.....	254
Information Displays.....	85
General Information.....	85

# Index

Information Messages.....	98
Active suspension.....	99
Airbag.....	99
Alarm.....	99
Automatic main beam control, Lane departure warning and Driver alert.....	99
Battery and charging system.....	100
Blind spot monitor.....	100
Child power lock.....	101
Climate control.....	101
Cruise control and Adaptive cruise control (ACC).....	101
Doors open.....	101
Engine immobiliser.....	102
Hill start assist.....	102
Keyless system.....	102
Lighting.....	103
Maintenance.....	104
Message indicator.....	98
Message symbols.....	98
Occupant protection.....	104
Parking brake.....	104
Power steering.....	104
Stability control (ESP).....	105
Start-stop.....	105
Transmission.....	105
Tyre pressure monitoring system.....	106
Viewing current messages.....	98
Voice control.....	107
Instrument Cluster.....	79
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	127
Interior Lamps.....	61
Courtesy lamp.....	61
LED Interior lighting.....	61
Reading lamps.....	61
Vanity mirror lamps.....	63
Introduction.....	7
iPod connection	
See: Connecting an external device.....	298
See: Connecting an external device - Vehicles With: Bluetooth.....	298
iPod	
See: Using an iPod.....	301
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	27
Attaching a child seat with top tethers.....	27
Top tether anchor points.....	27

## J

Jump starting	
See: Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	227
Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	227
To connect the booster cables.....	227
To start the engine.....	228

## K

Keyless Entry.....	41
Disabled keys.....	43
General information.....	41
Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade.....	44
Locking the vehicle.....	42
Passive key.....	42
Unlocking the vehicle.....	43
Keyless Starting.....	133
Failure to start.....	134
Ignition on.....	133
Starting a diesel engine.....	134
Starting with automatic transmission.....	134
Starting with manual transmission.....	134
Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving.....	135
Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary.....	135
Keys and Remote Controls.....	35

## L

Lane Departure Warning.....	177
Principle of Operation.....	177
Lighting Control.....	55
Headlamp flasher.....	55
Home safe lighting.....	55
Lighting control positions.....	55
Main and dipped beam.....	55
Parking lamps.....	55
Lighting.....	55
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	184
Load Carrying.....	179
General Information.....	179
Loading compact discs.....	265
6000CD, Sony and Sony DAB.....	265

# Index

Loading the compact disc changer.....	265
Load Retaining Fixtures.....	186
Installing the load bracket.....	187
Installing the load retaining fixtures.....	186
Locking and Unlocking.....	38
Automatic relocking.....	40
Central locking.....	38
Double locking.....	38
Double locking the doors with the key.....	38
Locking and unlocking confirmation.....	38
Locking and unlocking the doors and the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.....	39
Locking and unlocking the doors from inside.....	39
Locking and unlocking the doors with the key.....	38
Luggage compartment lid.....	40
Reprogramming the unlocking function.....	40
Locks.....	38
Lost security code.....	254
Luggage Anchor Points.....	179
4-door and 5-door.....	180
Estate.....	179
Luggage Covers.....	182
Stowing the luggage cover - Estate without full size spare wheel.....	183
<b>M</b>	
Maintenance.....	208
General Information.....	208
Technical Specifications.....	222
Manual Climate Control.....	109
Air conditioning.....	110
Air distribution control.....	109
Blower.....	109
Heating the interior quickly.....	109
Recirculated air.....	109
Ventilation.....	110
Manual Seats.....	121
Adjusting the angle of the seatback.....	122
Adjusting the height of the driver's seat.....	122
Adjusting the lumbar support.....	122
Moving the seats backwards and forwards.....	121
Manual Transmission.....	151
Map Pockets.....	130
Memory Function.....	130
Recalling a stored seat position.....	131
Resetting the memory.....	131
Setting a memory pre-set.....	130
Message Centre	
See: Information Displays.....	85
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	113
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	72
MP3 connection	
See: Connecting an external device.....	298
See: Connecting an external device - Vehicles With: Bluetooth.....	298
MP3 display options.....	269
CD text display options.....	269
MP3 file playback.....	268
6000CD.....	268
Playing a multi session disc.....	268
Sony and Sony DAB.....	268
<b>N</b>	
Navigation system commands.....	294
News broadcasts.....	264
All except Sony and Sony DAB.....	264
Sony and Sony DAB.....	264
<b>O</b>	
Occupant protection.....	30
Principle of Operation.....	30
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	220
On/off control.....	256
Opening and Closing the Bonnet.....	208
Closing the bonnet.....	209
Opening the bonnet.....	208

# Index

## P

Parking Aid.....	160
Manoeuvring with the parking aid.....	160
Switching the parking aid on and off.....	160
Parking Aids.....	160
Principle of Operation.....	160
Parking Brake.....	154
Personalised Settings.....	96
Help screen, radio, navigation and phone information.....	96
Language.....	97
Navigation information.....	96
Units of measure.....	97
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	38
Power Seats.....	122
2-way electric seat.....	122
8-way electric seat.....	123
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	221
Topping up.....	222
Power Windows.....	72
Anti-trap function.....	73
Driver's door switches.....	72
Front and rear passengers' door switches.....	72
Global opening and global closing.....	72
Opening and closing the windows automatically.....	72
Resetting the memory of the electric windows.....	73
Safety mode.....	73
Safety switch for rear windows.....	72
Programming the remote control.....	35
Programming a new remote control.....	35
Reprogramming the unlocking function.....	35

## R

Rear Fog Lamps.....	58
Rear Seats.....	124
Creating a level load floor.....	124
Folding the seatbacks down.....	124
Folding the seatbacks up.....	125

Rear Under Floor Storage.....	182
Vehicles with a sliding loadspace floor.....	182
Vehicles without a sliding loadspace floor.....	182
Rear view camera.....	162
Principle of Operation.....	162
Rear View Camera.....	162
Activating the rear view camera.....	162
Deactivating the rear view camera.....	164
Using the display.....	162
Vehicles with parking aid.....	164
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	52
Intermittent wipe.....	52
Reverse gear wipe.....	52
Washer.....	52
Refuelling - E85.....	146
Refuelling.....	146
Regional mode (REG).....	263
All except Sony and Sony DAB.....	263
Sony and Sony DAB.....	264
Remote control battery	
See: Changing the remote control battery.....	35
Remote control programming	
See: Programming the remote control.....	35
Removing a Headlamp.....	63
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	226
Repeat compact disc tracks.....	268
6000CD.....	268
Sony and Sony DAB.....	268
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	7
Look for the Ford logo on the following parts.....	8
Now you can be sure that your Ford parts are Ford parts.....	7
Roadside Emergencies.....	193
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	184
Roof rack.....	184
Running-In.....	192
Brakes and clutch.....	192
Engine.....	192
Tyres.....	192

## S

Safety Precautions.....	143
-------------------------	-----

# Index

Seat belt height adjustment.....	32
Seat belt reminder.....	33
Deactivating the seat belt reminder.....	33
Seat belts	
See: Fastening the seat belts.....	32
Seat memory function	
See: Memory Function.....	130
Seats.....	121
Security code.....	254
Setting the clock and date on the audio unit.....	255
6000CD.....	255
Sony and Sony DAB.....	255
Shuffle/random.....	266
6000CD.....	266
Sony CD and Sony CD DAB.....	267
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	121
Sliding Loadspace Floor.....	180
Storage compartment.....	181
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	239
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	165
Speed Limiter.....	173
Principle of Operation.....	173
Stability Control.....	155
Principle of Operation.....	155
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch.....	133
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	137
Cold or hot engine.....	137
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	133
General Information.....	133
Starting a Petrol Engine - E85.....	137
Starting at low ambient temperatures	
.....	137
Starting a Petrol Engine.....	136
Cold or hot engine.....	136
Engine idle speed after starting.....	136
Flooded engine.....	136
Start-Stop.....	140
Principle of Operation.....	140
Station preset buttons.....	258
Station tuning control.....	260
DAB service linking.....	260
Manual tuning.....	261
Scan tuning.....	261
Seek tuning.....	260
Steering Wheel Lock.....	135
Vehicles with keyless starting.....	135
Vehicles without keyless starting.....	135
Steering Wheel.....	49
Storage compartments.....	129
Sunroof	
See: Electric sunroof.....	118
Sun Shades.....	127
Switching Off the Engine.....	138
Vehicles with a turbocharger.....	138
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Symbols in this handbook.....	7
Symbols on your vehicle.....	7
<b>T</b>	
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	246
Telephone commands.....	289
Create a phonebook.....	292
Main settings.....	293
Phone.....	289
Phone functions.....	290
Telephone controls.....	273
Remote control.....	273
Telephone setup.....	272
Bond another Bluetooth phone.....	273
Making a phone an active phone.....	272
Phonebook.....	272
Phonebook categories.....	272
Telephone.....	272
General Information.....	272
Telephone	
See: Using the telephone - Vehicles With:	
Navigation System.....	276
See: Using the telephone - Vehicles Without:	
Navigation System.....	274
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	234
Checking the tyre pressure.....	237
General information.....	235
Inflating the tyre.....	236
Using the tyre repair kit.....	235

# Index

Tow Ball.....	188	Tyre Pressures	
Driving with a trailer.....	190	See: Technical Specifications.....	240
Driving without a trailer.....	191	Tyre Repair Kit	
Inserting the tow ball arm.....	189	See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	234
Maintenance.....	191	Tyres	
Removing the tow ball arm.....	190	See: Wheels and Tyres.....	229
Unlocking the tow ball arm			
mechanism.....	189	<b>U</b>	
Towing a Trailer.....	188	Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L	
Steep gradients.....	188	Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	210
Towing Points.....	206	Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L	
Installing the towing eye.....	206	Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....	215
Towing eye location.....	206	Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L EcoBoost	
Towing the Vehicle on Four		SCTi (Sigma).....	211
Wheels.....	206	Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L	
All vehicles.....	206	Duratec-HE (MI4).....	212
Vehicles with automatic		Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L	
transmission.....	207	Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	216
Towing.....	188	Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost	
Track selection.....	265	SCTi (MI4).....	213
All except Sony and Sony DAB.....	265	Under Bonnet Overview - 2.2L	
Sony and Sony DAB.....	265	Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	218
Traffic information control.....	259	Under Bonnet Overview - 2.3L	
Activating traffic announcements.....	259	Duratec-HE (MI4).....	214
Ending traffic announcements.....	260	Unloading the compact disc	
Local or distant traffic.....	259	changer.....	266
To adjust the preset volume.....	260	USB Port.....	131
Traffic announcement volume.....	260	USB	
Transmission.....	151	See: Using a USB device.....	299
Trip Computer.....	94	Using active suspension.....	159
Average fuel consumption.....	94	Selecting a setting.....	159
Average speed.....	94	System malfunction.....	159
Distance to empty.....	94	Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	168
Odometer.....	94	Automatic deactivation.....	171
Outside air temperature.....	94	Changing the set speed.....	169
Tripmeter.....	94	Setting a speed.....	169
Type 1 and 2.....	95	Setting the vehicle gap.....	170
Type 3.....	95	Switching the system off.....	171
Type approvals.....	305	Switching the system on.....	169
Certificate for United Arab Emirates.....	306	Temporarily deactivating the system.....	171
EU Declaration.....	306	Using an iPod.....	301
FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE.....	305	CD Navigation units.....	303
RX-42 - declaration of conformity.....	305	SD Navigation units.....	303
Tyre Care.....	238	Sony radio.....	302
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....	239		
Checking the tyre pressures.....	240		
Setting the vehicle load.....	240		



## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	81
ABS warning lamp.....	81
Airbag warning lamp.....	81
Blind spot monitor indicator.....	81
Brake system lamp.....	81
Coolant temperature warning lamp.....	81
Direction indicators.....	82
Engine warning lamp.....	82
Forward alert indicator.....	82
Front fog lamp indicator.....	82
Frost warning lamp.....	82
Glow plug indicator.....	82
Headlamp indicator.....	82
Ignition warning lamp.....	82
Lane departure warning indicator.....	82
Low fuel level warning lamp.....	83
Main beam indicator.....	83
Message indicator.....	83
Oil pressure warning lamp.....	83
Rear fog lamp indicator.....	83
Seat belt reminder.....	83
Shift indicator.....	83
Stability control (ESP) warning lamp.....	83
Start-stop indicator.....	83
Warning Triangle.....	193
4-door and 5-door.....	193
Estate and vehicles with tyre repair kit.....	193
Washer Fluid Check.....	222
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	51
Washing	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	225
Waveband button.....	258
Wheels and Tyres.....	229
General Information.....	229
Technical Specifications.....	240
Windows and Mirrors.....	72
Windscreen Washers.....	52
Windscreen Wipers.....	51
Intermittent wipe.....	51
Winter Tyres	
See: Using Winter Tyres.....	238
Wipers and Washers.....	51



